

Module 6 HIV Testing in Children



Total Module Time: 185 minutes (3 hours, 5 minutes)

Learning Objectives

After completing this module, participants will be able to:

- Understand the procedure for collecting a blood sample for rapid HIV testing.
- Understand how to conduct the Determine, Uni-Gold and Bioline rapid HIV tests and read the result.
- Demonstrate the proper procedure for collecting, drying and packaging dried blood spot (DBS) specimens for DNA PCR testing.
- Demonstrate how to complete required documentation for DBS specimen testing.
- Identify valid and invalid DBS specimens.

Methodologies



- Interactive trainer presentation
- Return demonstration

Materials Needed



- General supplies for collecting specimens.
- Determine HIV 1/2 Rapid Antibody Test kits
- Uni-Gold Recombigen® HIV Rapid Antibody Test kits
- Bioline HIV 1/2 Rapid Antibody Test kits
- DBS collection, drying and packing supplies
- The trainer should have the slide set for Module 6.
- The trainer should prepare enough A3 size copies of *the General Counselling and Testing Register* so that each participant can have one.
- Participants should have their Participant Manuals. The Participant Manual contains background technical content and information for the exercises.

References and Resources



- National Guidelines for Paediatric Provider-initiated Testing and Counselling
- Dried Blood Spot for DNA PCR Testing Health Facility Handbook
- Dried Blood Spot Collection Technique (poster)

Advance Preparation



- Exercise 1 requires advance preparation. Please review the exercise ahead of time.
- Collect supplies for collecting and conducting HIV-antibody tests, including rapid test kits (Determine, Uni-Gold and Bioline).
- Gather supplies needed to conduct the specimen collection for DBS testing, including forms for documentation of procedure, a *DNA PCR Test — Laboratory Requisition Form* and a sample *Under-Five Card*.
- Use the Dried Blood Spot Collection Technique poster as a tool to illustrate proper procedures and clarify valid vs. invalid specimens
- Review the appendices in this module ahead of time and prepare to incorporate them into the discussion.

Session 6.1: Collecting Blood Specimens and Conducting Rapid HIV Antibody Tests in Infants and Children

Activity/Method	Time
Interactive trainer presentation (Slides 1–25)	35 minutes
Questions and answers	5 minutes
Total Session Time	40 minutes

Session 6.2: Collecting, Storing and Transporting DBS Specimens

Activity/Method	Time
Interactive trainer presentation (Slides 27–56; 58–60)	30 minutes
Exercise 1: DBS specimen collection practice: Return demonstration in pairs (Slide 57)	100 minutes
Questions and answers	5 minutes
Review of key points (Slides 62-66)	10 minutes
Total Session Time	145 minutes

Session 6.1

Collecting Blood Specimens and Conducting Rapid HIV Antibody Tests in Infants and Children



Total Session Time: 40 minutes



Trainer Instructions

Slides 1–2

Step 1: Begin by reviewing the Module 6 Learning Objectives (page 6-1) and the Session Objectives, listed below.

Session Objectives

After completing this session, participants will be able to:

- Understand the procedure for collecting a blood sample for rapid HIV testing.
- Understand how to conduct the Determine, Uni-Gold and Bioline rapid HIV tests and read the result.



Trainer Instructions

Slides 3–16

Step 2:

- Ask how many participants have been trained in rapid HIV testing. For these participants, this session will mainly be a review. If most or all participants are already trained in rapid testing, run this session as a discussion, asking participants to present each step in the process as the slides are shown. For participants who are not trained in rapid HIV testing this will be a chance to learn more.
- First provide an overview of who can conduct PITC, stressing the importance of ensuring that the process is lead by someone who is trained.
- Distribute Determine test strips to participants so they can become familiar with them. Present the steps in conducting Determine rapid antibody testing. Refer participants to Appendix 6-A: How to Conduct a Finger-Prick Blood Draw.
- Remind healthcare workers that every HIV test must begin with a pre-test session (group or individual) and end with post-test counselling, which will include the provision of referrals to ongoing support, care and treatment.
- Reassure participants that these steps will be practised during the practicum portion of the training.



Make These Points

- For any HIV test, both rapid antibody and DNA PCR testing, it is important that healthcare workers collect samples and provide test results in a space where confidentiality can be maintained.
- It is important to follow all of the steps correctly when collecting a sample for diagnostic testing. Specific steps will vary depending upon the type of test and brand of test kit, but the first two steps of testing are always the same: 1) collect supplies and 2) use universal precautions.
- Always use universal precautions (e.g. wearing gloves, proper disposal of needles/lancets) when collecting blood specimens.

Who can conduct PITC?

To date, testing and counselling is most often conducted by lay counsellors, but some facilities use nurses or nurse counsellors for this service. The use of lay counsellors is an important model because of the severely restricted professional workforce; however, it is critical that lay counsellors are supervised by a healthcare professional. Note that Zambian guidelines allow lay counsellors to conduct HIV testing procedures by finger or heel stick, but lay counsellors cannot obtain venous samples. Since venous samples are not needed for rapid testing or to collect DBS samples, lay counsellors are allowed to collect blood for these tests.

With training, paediatric HIV testing and counselling — including pre- and post-test counselling and the taking of blood samples by finger heel/toe stick — can be conducted by any of the following healthcare workers:

- Nurse Counsellors
- Nurses
- Midwives
- Lab technicians and lab scientists
- Clinical officers
- Medical licentiates
- Physicians
- Counsellors
- Lay counsellors

Regardless of the staffing model used, it is important for all staff members to understand and advocate for paediatric PITC and that professional healthcare workers are prepared to offer these services when lay counsellors are not available. Consistent application of the testing and counselling guidelines within facilities is important to community acceptance and understanding.

Procedures for all HIV tests

For any HIV test, both rapid antibody and DNA PCR testing, it is important that healthcare workers collect samples and provide test results in a private space where confidentiality can be maintained.

It is important to follow all of the steps correctly when collecting a sample for diagnostic testing. Specific steps will vary depending upon the type of test and brand of test kit, but the first two steps of testing are always the same: 1) collect supplies and 2) use universal precautions. These steps are explained in detail along with specific testing procedures for each test in the following sections. Below, a checklist is provided that may be used to guide testing procedures:

- Collect supplies.
- Use universal precautions.
- Check the test kit to ensure it has not expired.
- Choose the puncture site.
- Demonstrate to caregiver how to hold the child for the procedure.
- Prepare the puncture site.
- Collect the specimen.
- For antibody: test the specimen.
- For DNA PCR: dry and package materials for sending to laboratory.
- Read and record results.
- For antibody: if positive, conduct a confirmatory test.

The healthcare worker should remember that the caregiver and child may be nervous about the test and unsure about the specific procedures. As the healthcare worker moves from one step in the process to the next, it is helpful to review with the caregiver what is being done. When the blood has been collected, one should immediately remind the caregiver of the next steps (e.g. *“The results will be ready in 10-15 minutes. I’ll call your name when the result is ready and we’ll discuss it. Whether the result is positive or negative, I will speak to you about how to care for your child.”*)

It is important that healthcare workers follow the algorithms noted in Chapter 4 of the Paediatric PITC guidelines.

How to Conduct Determine HIV-1/2 Rapid Antibody Testing in Infants, Children and Adults¹

Note: In children 18 months of age and older, as in adults, repeat testing is required if an HIV-antibody test is positive.

Step 1: Collect supplies

Supplies for conducting a finger prick

- Sterile lancets (2 mm long)
- A Pasteur or precision pipette
- Sterile gauze pads or cotton wool
- Alcohol wipes or disinfectant for skin (70% spirit)

Supplies for paperwork

- Pen
- *General Counselling and Testing Register*

Safety supplies

- Gloves (powder-free preferred)
- Rubbish bin
- Sharps container

Testing items

- One Determine HIV- 1/2 test strip
- Chase buffer
- Timer or stopwatch

Step 2: Use universal precautions

Always use universal precautions when collecting blood specimens. These include:

- Treat all blood specimens as if they are infectious.
- Wash hands and dry them thoroughly before performing procedures.
- Put on gloves before coming in contact with blood and other body fluids or items that may be contaminated with blood or body fluids.
- Take precautions to avoid needle injury and handle all sharps with extreme care.
- Wash hands immediately after removing gloves.
- Promptly clean up any spills of infective material with a disinfectant such as a 0.5% dilution of household chlorine bleach¹.
- Dispose of contaminated sharps and waste appropriately.
- In the event of a sharps injury, follow the protocol at the facility for post-exposure prophylaxis.

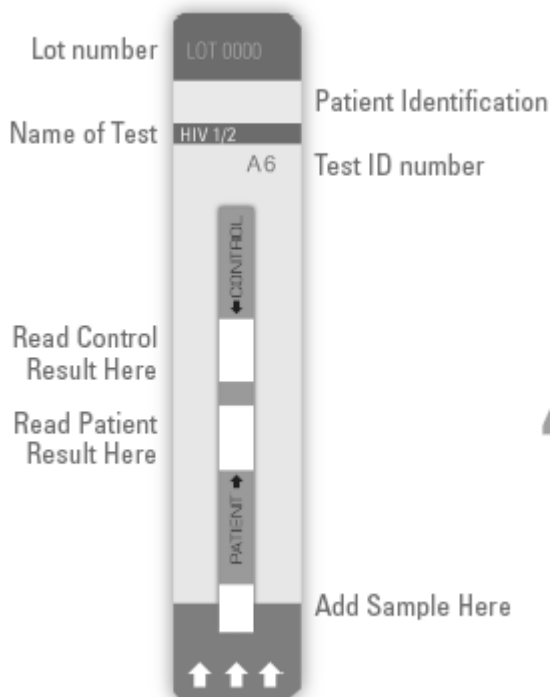
¹ A 0.5% solution of household chlorine bleach can be made by mixing 6 parts water to 1 part 3.5% chlorine bleach. A “part” is any unit of measure (e.g., teaspoon, cup, litre or anything else).

Step 3: Check test kit, label test strip and pull off the protective foil cover

1. Always check the test kit before using to ensure the items have not expired or been damaged. Make sure the kit is at room temperature prior to use. Use one strip per test and be sure to preserve the lot number on the remaining packet of strips.

2. Label the test strip with the client identification number.

3. Pull off the protective foil cover.



Step 4: Choose the puncture site

Once the test strip has been prepared, the healthcare worker is ready to take the blood sample. The next step is to choose the puncture site.

Infants up to two years old:

- Small infants ≤ 9 kg: *prick the heel*. The heel is the only suitable puncture site for very young or very small infants because there is a risk of hitting the bone when puncturing fingers or the toes. Heel puncture should be performed on the plantar surface of the heel, beyond the lateral and medial limits of the heel bone. The suitable areas are marked by the shaded areas in Figure 6.1. Choose the lowest point in recommended area. The back of the heel and the Achilles tendon are **not** suitable sites and should not be punctured.
- Larger infants > 9 kg: *prick the heel or lateral aspect of the big toe*. Fingers and small toes should still be avoided because of the risk of hitting bone.

Figure 6.1: Safe and unsafe puncture areas



Children two years old or greater:

- Position the child's hand palm-side up.
- The best finger to use is the ring (fourth) finger on the left hand as this finger is typically the least used by the infant. The side of the finger is generally less sensitive than the tip of the finger. Do not stick the very end of the finger where the bone is close to the skin. The thumb is not recommended because it is the most painful.

Step 5: Demonstrate to caregiver how to hold the child for the procedure

- Children less than two years of age: ask the caregiver to sit holding the baby in an upright position against her or his chest (as shown in photo to right). Position the infant with her or his foot hanging downward. This will increase venous pressure and will help the blood flow more easily.
- Children two years old or greater: the child may sit on her or his own or on the caregiver's lap. Have the child rest her or his hand on a horizontal surface such as counter, table or desk.
- Ask the caregiver to hold the child securely so that the blood sample can be taken.



Step 6: Prepare the puncture site

- If the child's finger or foot is not clean it should be washed with soap and clean water.
- Warm the site to increase blood supply. The parent or caregiver can do this by holding the child's hand or foot and rubbing gently.
- Wash hands and put on powder-free gloves. If powdered gloves are being used, rinse glove-covered hands after putting them on to remove the powder.
- Clean the child's fingertip (or foot) with alcohol. Start in the middle and work outward to prevent contaminating the area. Allow the area to dry.



Step 7: Collect the specimen

- Encourage the caregiver to comfort her or his child during the procedure. Comforting reduces distress and makes it easier for the child to remain calm after the procedure.
- Hold the child's finger or foot; firmly puncture the site off-centre with a new sterile 2 mm lancet. A 2 mm lancet is the correct length to puncture safely without damaging bone. **Do not use a needle, scalpel or longer lancet.** The puncture should be with one continuous, deliberate motion at an angle (slightly less than 90 degrees).
- Allow a large blood drop to form and wipe it away with a dry, sterile gauze pad. The first drop of blood may contain tissue fluids that could contaminate the specimen.



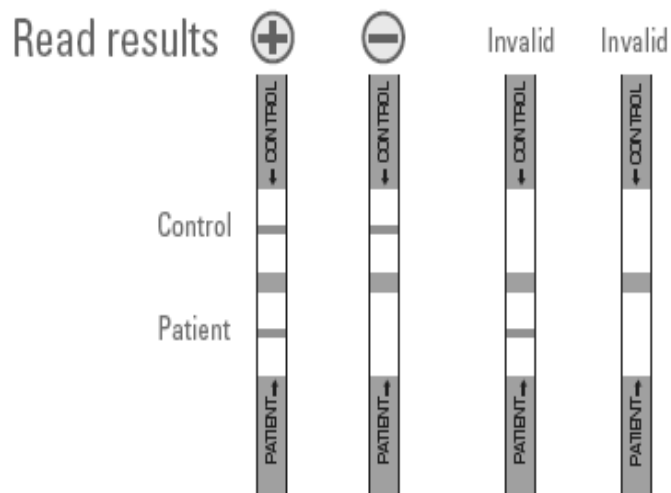
- Allow a second, large blood drop to form. Blood may flow best if the finger is held lower than the elbow or, when collecting from the heel or toe, the child is held upright with the foot hanging down.
- Collect 50 µl of blood using either a Pasteur or precision pipette.
- Apply a gauze pad to the puncture site until the bleeding stops.
- Discard gauze in a bin and lancet in sharps container after use.

Step 8: Test the specimen

- Apply the blood (50 µl) to the sample (absorbent) pad on the test strip.
- Wait one minute.
- Add one drop of chase buffer to the sample pad.
- Discard pipette in sharps container and gloves in bin after use.
- Wait 15 minutes.

Step 9: Read and record the results

- Read the results.
- A positive test result: Two lines of any intensity will appear in both the control and patient areas.
- A negative test result: One line will appear in the control area and no line in the patient area.
- An invalid test result: No line appears in the control area. Do not report invalid results. Repeat the test with a new test strip even if a line appears in the patient area.
- Record the test results and other pertinent information on the appropriate forms.





Trainer Instructions

Slides 18–26

Step 3: Tell participants that Uni-Gold and Bioline are used for confirmatory testing of a positive Determine result in children 18 months of age and older and adults. Ask how many participants are familiar with Uni-Gold. Then ask how many are familiar with the Bioline test.

Pass around samples of the Uni-Gold and Bioline test kits and review the testing procedure for both tests (see Appendix 6-B: How to Conduct Uni-Gold Recombigen HIV Rapid Antibody Test and Appendix 6-C: How to Conduct Bioline HIV-1/2 Rapid Antibody Test for Confirmatory Testing), focusing on how they differ from the Determine testing procedure summarised in this session.

Explain to participants that they will have a chance to practise rapid testing during the practicum sessions in the health facility.

Step 4: Allow five minutes for questions and answers on this session.

Session 6.2 Collecting, Storing and Transporting DBS Specimens



Total Session Time: 145 minutes



Trainer Instructions Slide 27

Step 1: Begin by reviewing the Session Objectives, listed below.

Session Objectives

After completing this session, participants will be able to:

- Demonstrate the proper procedure for collecting, drying and packaging dried blood spot (DBS) specimens for DNA PCR testing.
- Demonstrate how to complete required documentation for DBS specimen testing.
- Identify valid and invalid DBS specimens.



Trainer Instructions Slides 28–29

Step 2:

- Introduce this session by asking participants about their experiences taking blood specimens from infants by venipuncture. Ask them to describe the difficulties they have encountered in this procedure.
- Explain that DBS sampling is a procedure to collect blood for a DNA PCR test. DNA PCR testing is a technique that has been available for more than 40 years. In some countries, it is used for newborn screening, blood monitoring and for diagnosing at least three dozen different conditions from dengue fever, hepatitis B and measles to yellow fever. Session 6.2 is in reference to the use of DBS sampling for HIV DNA PCR testing. As with the rapid HIV-antibody tests, the DBS procedure does not require venous sampling. The use of DBS sampling avoids some of the problems encountered in collecting and transporting whole blood specimens.



Make These Points

- HIV DNA PCR testing allows the diagnosis of HIV in children less than 18 months of age. Early testing is the gateway to early, life-saving care and treatment.
- DBS collection, which does not require venipuncture, can be carried out in locations distant from laboratories, giving more children throughout the country access to testing.
- Blood is collected by finger prick or heel/toe stick with a lancet (just as with rapid test specimens).
- DBS specimens have many advantages, including easy specimen collection, longer lifespan of the specimens and little biohazard risk.

Advantages of DBS specimens

DBS specimen collection involves taking small drops of whole blood that are collected on strips of special filter paper card and then dried. The procedure for taking a DBS specimen involves obtaining blood from a child's heel, toe or finger and applying it directly onto filter paper card, bypassing the need for needles, syringes, whole blood collection and separation of blood into plasma.

The amount of blood required is small (usually 100 µL). If properly dried and stored, specimens remain stable for an extended period at room temperature. Even though studies have suggested that specimens are stable for 1–3 months — even as long as one year, depending on the temperature at which they are stored — all specimens should be sent to the laboratory for testing as soon as possible. Dried specimens can be transported with minimal special handling to a central laboratory.

The advantages of using DBS specimens include:

- As a lower volume of blood is required for testing, specimen collection is easier and requires less training.
- The specimens have a longer lifespan, are stable and therefore easier to transport and store than whole blood specimens. This makes it possible to have centralised testing.
- Because specimens are dried, they pose little biohazard risk.



Trainer Instructions

Slides 30–34

Step 3: Ask participants to think back to Module 4 and review when and why DNA PCR testing is used. Refer participants to the HIV testing algorithms for guidance on testing for children.

When you review the steps for collecting DBS specimens, you may go a bit more quickly through the steps that mirror those for HIV antibody testing as described in Session 6.1. Focus instead, on the steps that differ.

Start by reviewing the first three steps in preparing to collect DBS specimens:

- Collect supplies.
- Use universal precautions.
- Complete the laboratory form and the sample card; sufficient time should be spent on this to ensure that all participants understand how to fill in forms correctly.



Make These Points

- DBS specimens are collected by trained healthcare workers or lay counsellors. Lay counsellors should have close supervision by a clinician.
- There are many items required for DNA PCR testing, including supplies for specimen collecting, drying and storing.
- Always use universal precautions when collecting blood specimens.
- Laboratory forms, the *Specimen Delivery Checklist*, registers, *Under-Five Card* and the Specimen filter paper card must all be completed clearly and correctly to avoid mislabelling. The specimen filter paper card must also be handled with care to prevent contamination.
- Mislabelling specimens is the most common error in DBS specimen collection for DNA PCR testing.
- **Refer participants to Appendix 6-D for DBS specimen collection instructions with graphics. Remind participants that the poster in Appendix 6-D represents a summary of these steps.**

Resources for Collecting DBS Specimens

Step 1: Collect supplies

Supplies for conducting a heel or toe prick:

- Sterile lancets (2 mm long)
- Sterile gauze pads or cotton wool
- Alcohol wipes or disinfectant for skin (70% spirit)

Supplies for paperwork

- Pen
- *DNA PCR Test — Laboratory Requisition Form*
- *Specimen Delivery Checklist*

Safety supplies

- Gloves (powder-free preferred)
- Rubbish bin
- Sharps container

Supplies for collecting, drying and storing specimens

- DBS filter paper blood collection card
- Drying rack
- Glassine paper
- Sealable plastic bags
- Desiccant packs
- Humidity indicator cards
- Permanent marker to label bag
- Large envelope

Because there are many items required for DNA PCR, it is important to have a reliable procurement and supply management system to prevent stock outs.

Step 2: Use universal precautions

Always use universal precautions when collecting blood specimens. These include:

- Treat all blood specimens as if they are infectious.
- Wash hands and dry them thoroughly before performing procedures.
- Put on gloves before coming in contact with blood and other body fluids or items that may be contaminated with blood or body fluids.
- Take precautions to avoid needle injury and handle all sharps with extreme care.
- Wash hands immediately after removing gloves.
- Promptly clean up any spills of infective material with a disinfectant such as a 0.5% dilution of household chlorine bleach².
- Dispose of contaminated sharps and waste appropriately.
- In the event of a sharps injury, follow the protocol at the facility for post-exposure prophylaxis.

Step 3: Complete the laboratory form and label the sample card

The first step in collecting DBS specimens is to ensure that the test documentation is in stock. **Mislabelling specimens is the most common error in DBS specimen collection.**

² A 0.5% solution of household chlorine bleach can be made by mixing 6 parts water to 1 part 3.5% chlorine bleach. A “part” is any unit of measure (e.g., teaspoon, cup, litre or anything else).

Important documentation for DNA PCR tests includes:

- **DNA PCR Test — Laboratory Requisition Form:** This form must accompany the specimen to the laboratory. The requisition form requires clinic details, site code, patient details, specimen details, clinical information and information about the requesting clinician.
- **Specimen Delivery Checklist:** This is a checklist to verify that the DBS specimen and the *DNA PCR Test — Laboratory Requisition Form* are sent to the laboratory together. One form is used for each batch of specimens sent to the district laboratory. This form is filled in after the blood specimen is taken.
- **General Counselling and Testing Register:** This register, in which an entry is made when the DBS specimen is collected, will be completed when the test result is received. This register is for recording testing results and caregiver details to support follow-up. This register should be kept where HIV antibody testing and DBS specimen collection is conducted.
- **Under-Five Card:** Complete the infant testing section for all infants and children who are provided with HIV testing.
- **Filter paper card:** After filling in the *DNA PCR Test — Laboratory Requisition Form*, the healthcare worker taking the blood specimen should fill in the filter paper card with the infant's name and date of birth and the date of the test (see Figure 6.2: DBS specimen filter paper card). When filling out the filter paper card:
 - Avoid touching the areas within the circles with gloved or ungloved hands. Skin oils, ink, latex and powder may contaminate the specimen, making it unreadable.
 - Use one card per client. Even though there are five circles — only place one client's blood on a card.

Figure 6.2: DBS specimen filter paper card

District Code Facility Code Patient #

NAME JP 50 40-133-00001-1

DATE 15/4/2006

DOB: 01/03/2006
Facility: Kalingalinga HC
District: Lusaka

CE me sm Lot-No. S&S 903# W-041 Expiry Date: 2007-08



Trainer Instructions

Slides 35–42

Step 4:

Present steps 4-9 in collecting DBS specimens:

- Choose the puncture site.
- Demonstrate to caregiver how to hold the child for the procedure.
- Prepare the puncture site.
- Collect the specimen.
- Apply gauze to puncture site and place filter paper card for drying
- Complete documentation.

Refer participants to Appendix 6-D for more information. Note that steps shown on the poster in Appendix 6-D are a summary of the steps presented in this section. Use the slide set and poster to illustrate the differences between valid and invalid specimens.



Make These Points

- The location of the puncture site on the foot (heel or toe) is determined by the age and weight of the child. In preparation for heel or toe prick, the caregiver should hold the child in an upright position with the child's foot down and the heel outward.
- Always clean the puncture site with alcohol and allow it to dry before pricking with a sterile lancet.
- Wipe away the first drop of blood. Bring the filter paper card to the drop of blood. Lightly touch the one circle on the filter paper card to the drop of blood, allowing the blood to soak through and fill the pre-printed circle.
- It is important that blood be properly placed on the filter paper card to ensure the integrity of the sample.
- Proper documentation is key to ensuring that the DBS specimen can be analysed and results sent back to the facility in a timely manner. Mislabelling specimens is the most common error reported with DBS specimen collection.
- Schedule an appointment for the caregivers to return to receive their child's results. Advise caregivers to return sooner with their child if there are any signs of illness. (If the child is hospitalised, an appointment should be given upon discharge for children whose test results were not received during the hospital stay.)

Step 4: Choose the puncture site

Once basic paperwork has been completed, the healthcare worker is ready to take the blood sample. The next step is to choose the puncture site.

- **Small infants ≤ 9 kg:** *prick the heel.* The heel is the only suitable puncture site for very young or very small infants because there is a risk of hitting the bone when puncturing fingers or the toes. Heel puncture should be performed on the plantar surface of the heel, beyond the lateral and medial limits of the heel bone as shown in Figure 6.1 and Appendix 6-D). Choose the lowest point in recommended area. The back of the heel and the Achilles tendon are **not** suitable sites and should not be punctured.
- **Larger infants >9 kg:** *prick the heel or lateral aspect of the big toe.* Fingers and small toes should still be avoided because of the risk of hitting bone.

Step 5: Demonstrate to caregiver how to hold the child for the procedure

- Ask the caregiver to sit holding the baby in an upright position against her or his chest (as shown in photo to right and in Appendix 6-D). Position the infant with her or his foot hanging downward. This will increase venous pressure and will help the blood flow more easily.
- Ask the caregiver to hold the child securely so that the blood sample can be taken.



Step 6: Prepare the puncture site

- If the child's finger or foot is not clean it should be washed with soap and clean water.
- Warm the site to increase blood supply. The parent or caregiver can do this by holding the child's foot and rubbing gently. A cloth or clean nappy soaked in warm water (no warmer than 41°C) can also be kept on the puncture site for three minutes.
- Wash hands and put on powder-free gloves. If powdered gloves are being used, rinse glove-covered hands after putting them on to remove the powder.
- Clean the child's foot with alcohol. Start in the middle and work outward to prevent contaminating the area. Allow to air dry for **30**



seconds. It is important to allow the site to dry because residual alcohol may cause haemolysis (haemolysis refers to the breakdown of red blood cells, which can interfere with laboratory testing), which will invalidate the specimen.

Step 7: Collect the specimen

- Encourage the caregiver to comfort her or his baby during the procedure. Comforting reduces distress and makes it easier for the baby to regain calm after the procedure. Ask the caregiver to hold the infant securely so that the blood sample can be taken.
- Hold the child's foot, firmly puncture the site off-centre with a new sterile 2 mm lancet. A 2 mm lancet is the correct length to puncture safely without damaging bone. **Do not use a needle, scalpel or longer lancet.** The puncture should be with one continuous, deliberate motion at an angle (slightly less than 90 degrees).
- Allow a large blood drop to form and wipe it away with a dry sterile gauze pad. The first drop of blood may contain tissue fluids that could contaminate the specimen.
- Allow a second large blood drop to form.
- Holding the filter paper card by its edges, bring the card surface to the drop. **Lightly** touch the one circle on the filter paper card to this drop of blood, allowing the blood to soak through and completely fill the pre-printed circle by natural flow.
- Do not drag the infant's foot down to the filter paper card as this causes them to struggle and you may lose the drop of blood or spoil the card.
- Fill the circle completely but avoid layering blood. The blood should be drawn onto the filter paper card by capillary action, with **no contact** between the infant's foot and the paper. Apply blood to one side of filter paper card only. Each drop should permeate through to the other side of the card.
- Repeat this procedure, filling the remaining circles with successive drops of blood. Fill all circles if possible. If this is not possible collect enough blood to fill at least three circles on the filter paper card.

If blood flow diminishes, wipe away the congealed blood with a sterile gauze pad and gently massage or apply pressure to the whole lower leg and foot. It is important to avoid squeezing or "milking" the area directly around the puncture site. Milking the site may contaminate the blood specimen with tissue fluids, resulting in an invalid specimen. If the puncture is still not bleeding after applying pressure, a second puncture is required. The second puncture can be taken from the other foot or from a different safe part of the same foot (shown in Figure 6.1 and Appendix 6-D).

Filter paper cards are designed to absorb blood uniformly. Blotting or smearing the blood onto the paper, or placing a blood drop on top of another drop, damages the paper's absorption capacity and leads to inaccurate test results. It is therefore crucial that the blood be properly placed on the filter paper card.

Table 6.1: Summary of proper DBS specimen collection

<ul style="list-style-type: none">■ Apply blood to one side of the filter paper card only. Either side may be used for blood specimen collection.■ Do not press the filter paper card against the puncture site.■ Do not layer drops of blood on one circle or apply blood more than once in the same collection circle.■ Avoid touching the circles or smearing them.■ It is critical that entire circle be uniformly saturated. <p>Remember: It is better to complete three good circles than five incomplete ones!</p>

Step 8: Apply gauze to puncture site and place filter paper card for drying

When at least three, but preferably five, of the circles have been filled, wipe excess blood from the infant's foot and apply gentle pressure to the wound with gauze pad, discarding gauze in a bin after use. Place the filter paper card in a drying rack or place it flat on a clean dry surface.

Step 9: Complete documentation

After the specimen collection is completed, record the test in the infant's *Under-Five Card* and medical record. Remind caregivers to:

- Return to the clinic to receive their child's test result. Make an appointment for the delivery of the results and post-test counselling. If the child is hospitalised, an appointment should be given upon discharge for children whose test results were not received during the hospital stay.
- Promptly bring the child in for care if there are any signs of illness.

The test result will be recorded in the *General Counselling and Testing Register* when the result is received.

See Appendices 6-E and 6-F for forms on which to document information.



Trainer Instructions

Slides 43–47

Step 5: Present the final steps, 10-11:

- Dry the DBS specimens.
- Pack the DBS specimens for storage and shipment.



Make These Points

- Filter paper cards should be dried horizontally for at least three hours away from direct sunlight or heat.
- It is important that the specimens be completely dry before storage and transportation.
- Always stack cards dry filter paper cards between sheet of glassine paper and store with desiccants in a resealable plastic bag with a humidity card to show when the desiccants should be replaced or recharged.
- Healthcare workers should always send the filter paper cards with DBS specimens, the related laboratory forms and the *Specimen Delivery Checklist* together in one envelope. These forms should be reviewed for accuracy and completeness prior to packaging.

Step 10: Dry the DBS specimens

Filter paper cards with DBS specimens should be put in a drying rack or placed flat on a clean, dry, non-absorbent surface and allowed to air dry for **at least three hours** at room temperature. They should be placed away from direct heat and sunlight.

It is important that the filter paper cards be completely dry before storage and transportation.

- The filter paper card should not be dried near an open window because they need to be kept away from dust and insects, as well as direct sunlight, while drying.
- The filter paper cards should not be heated, stacked or allowed to touch one another or other surfaces during the drying process. Keep *DNA PCR Laboratory Requisition Forms* with drying filter paper cards.

Step 11: Pack the filter paper cards for storage and shipment

Packages used to store filter paper cards must keep the specimens as dry as possible, particularly since humid conditions will accelerate degradation of the specimen. Once filter paper cards are completely dry, they should be stored according to the following steps:

Stack dry DBS cards

- Place a sheet of glassine paper between dry filter paper cards to prevent the specimens touching each other and becoming cross-contaminated.
- Fold the ends of the glassine paper over each of the cards.

Place cards into sealable plastic bags

- The bags used for storage must be made of heavy-duty plastic and sealable to prevent moisture from entering.
- The number of filter paper cards that can fit into a bag will depend on the size of the bag used. Up to five filter paper cards can be put into one of the standard bags supplied by the programme. The bag used should be just the right size to hold the cards. Bags that are too big allow the cards to move around inside risking cross-contamination.

Add desiccant packets and humidity cards to the bag and seal

- Into each bag, put at least one desiccant packet per filter paper card. Desiccant packets are used to keep specimens dry.
- Into each standard-sized bag put one humidity indicator card. Humidity cards are used to monitor the amount of moisture in the bag and let healthcare workers know when desiccant packets need to be replaced. These cards have moisture sensitive spots that change from blue (dry) to pink (damp) depending on the presence of moisture in the air.
- It is important to put at least the equivalent number of desiccant packets as filter paper cards in each bag, e.g., if there are seven filter paper cards in a bag, at least seven desiccant packets should be placed in that bag along with one humidity indicator card.
- Remove air from the bag and seal.

Since the standard bags used for the programme are already packed with desiccant packets and a humidity card, desiccant packets and humidity cards are generally not reused. However, if necessary, desiccant packets and humidity cards can be refreshed:

- If humidity card is pink at the 30% level, recharge card.
- Recharge desiccant packets together with humidity card by placing desiccant packets and humidity card in standard, clean microwave oven and heat on high for bursts of 10 seconds until cards turn blue. Cool for five minutes and return to sealable plastic bag immediately.
- Alternatively, recharge card and desiccant pack by heating at 50-60°C for 3-4 hours in a drying oven. Cool 10 minutes and then return to a sealable plastic bag immediately.
- If a drying oven is not available, place humidity cards and an excess number of desiccant packets in the sealable bag and return to laboratory.

Complete *Specimen Delivery Checklist*

1. Ensure Patient ID was filled in as samples were collected.
2. Check off boxes under “Specimen sent” when samples are dispatched. Confirm that all specimens are also recorded in the clinic or ward logbook.
3. Sign the bottom of the form once completed.

Store DBS specimens

Packaged filter paper cards should be kept cool and dry until they can be sent to the district laboratory for DNA PCR testing. It is not necessary to refrigerate specimens; if they are refrigerated, care should be taken to avoid placing them in a malfunctioning refrigerator where water may drip on them.

Ship DBS specimens

When filter paper cards are ready to be shipped, use the *Specimen Delivery Checklist* to verify that each specimen has a *DNA PCR Test — Laboratory Requisition Form*.

Place the plastic bag of filter paper cards, the laboratory requisition forms related to each specimen and the *Specimen Delivery Checklist* into a large, strong envelope. The outside of the envelope should be clearly labelled as follows:

- “Infant Specimens”
- Facility name (if laboratory is not on site)
- Date sent to laboratory

Seal the envelope, taking care not to staple the filter paper cards. It is preferable to get specimens to the lab within a day or two of collection. When specimens are being transported by vehicle, ensure they are not left in a vehicle because sun and heat will cause them to deteriorate.

Where to send specimens

Filter paper cards should be sent to laboratories in the same way CD4 specimens are currently sent. Specimens should first be sent to the district laboratory. The district laboratory will send specimens to the central laboratory. Results will be returned to the district laboratory from where they will be distributed to the facilities.



Trainer Instructions

Slides 48–56

Step 6: Review the characteristics of valid and invalid DBS specimens, referring participants to the photos in Tables 6.2 and 6.3 in the Participant Manual.



Make These Points

- It is very important for healthcare workers to collect valid DBS specimens that can be analysed in the lab. Check that DBS specimens are valid while the client is still waiting and again, BEFORE they are sent to the lab.
- Quality assurance should be practised on all levels and should be included as a part of the supervision process.

Valid and Invalid DBS Specimens

Incorrectly collected specimens can result in either erroneous laboratory results or delays due to the need for a new blood specimen.

Characteristics of valid DBS specimens (see Table 6.2 and Appendix 6-D)

- Filter paper card circles have not been contaminated by dirt or other foreign substances.
- Blood spots completely fill all of the pre-printed circles and have been applied evenly on only one side of the filter paper card, without layering or clots.
- All information is readable and accurately recorded on the *DNA PCR Test — Laboratory Requisition Form* and on the filter paper card. REMEMBER — labelling errors are the most frequent source of errors in DNA PCR testing, so take the necessary time and care.
- The specimens have been dried for at least three hours away from direct heat and sunlight on a flat surface that will not absorb the blood.

Table 6.2: Examples of a valid specimen

Picture	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">■ Circles are completely filled.■ The card has been labelled with appropriate identification.■ Blood is soaked through to the other side of the card.




Characteristics of invalid DBS specimens (see Table 6.3)





The most common practices that invalidate specimens are:

- Filling out filter paper cards and requisition forms improperly or incorrectly.
- Not enough blood for testing.
- Specimen appears scratched or abraded.
- Drying the specimens improperly or placing DBS cards in bags before they are completely dry (specimen appears bright red on the filter paper card).
- Oversaturated specimens.
- Specimen appears clotted or layered (putting multiple drops).
- Applying blood to both sides of filter paper card.
- Specimen is haemolysed, discoloured or contaminated.
- Specimen exhibits serum rings, serum has separated from cells.
- Collecting blood so that it does not go through paper completely.

Table 6.3 depicts the most common types of invalid DBS specimens that healthcare workers should avoid.

Table 6.3: Examples of invalid DBS specimens

Picture	Problem and possible causes
	<p>Problem Not enough blood for testing</p> <p>Possible causes</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Removing filter paper card before blood had completely filled circle or before blood has soaked through to the other side ■ Applying blood to filter paper card with a capillary tube ■ The filter paper card coming in contact with gloved or ungloved hands or substances, such as hand lotion or powder
	<p>Problem Specimen appears scratched or abraded.</p> <p>Possible causes</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Applying blood with a capillary tube or other device
	<p>Problem Specimen is bright red.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Not drying specimen fully

Picture	Problem and possible causes
	<p>Problem Specimen is too saturated.</p> <p>Possible causes</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Soaking both sides of the filter paper card ▪ Applying blood with a syringe
	<p>Problem Specimen appears clotted or layered.</p> <p>Possible causes</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Layering one blood drop on top of another ▪ Filling circle on both sides of filter paper card
	<p>Problem Specimen is haemolysed, discoloured or contaminated.</p> <p>Possible causes</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Squeezing or “milking” the area surrounding the puncture site ▪ Allowing filter paper card to come in contact with glove or ungloved hands ▪ Exposing blood spots to direct heat
	<p>Problem Specimen exhibits serum rings, serum has separated from cells.</p> <p>Possible causes</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Not allowing alcohol to dry at puncture site before making skin puncture ▪ Allowing filter paper card to come in contact with alcohol, hand lotion, etc. ▪ Milking or excessive squeezing of the area surrounding puncture site ▪ Drying specimen improperly ▪ Applying blood to filter paper card with a capillary tube



Trainer Instructions

Slide 57

Step 7: Lead participants through Exercise 1, which will give them a chance to practise collecting, drying and packing DBS specimens.

Exercise 1: DBS specimen collection practice

Return demonstration in pairs

Purpose	To practise DBS collection, drying and packing techniques
Duration	100 minutes
Advance Preparation	<p>Collect the following supplies:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Flipchart paper and markers ▪ Filter paper blood collection card (two for each pair of participants) ▪ Drying rack (one for each pair of participants) ▪ Sterile lancet (two for each pair of participants) ▪ Alcohol prep or skin disinfectant ▪ Sterile gauze or cotton wool ▪ Gloves (two for each pair of participants) ▪ Sealable plastic bags (one for each pair of participants) ▪ Glassine paper (two sheets for each pair of participants) ▪ Humidity cards (one for each pair of participants) ▪ Desiccant packets (five for each pair of participants) ▪ Sharps containers (one for each pair of participants) ▪ <i>DNA PCR Test — Laboratory Requisition Form</i> ▪ <i>Specimen Delivery Checklist</i> ▪ <i>General Counselling and Testing Register</i> ▪ <i>Sample Under-Five Card</i>, if available
Introduction	<p>This exercise is a return demonstration. First, the trainers will demonstrate the correct DBS specimen collection, drying and packing technique and then participants will break into pairs to “return” the demonstration.</p> <p>Refer participants to Appendix 6-D in the Participant Manual as a reminder of the DBS collection steps.</p>
Activities	<p>Demonstration</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. With a co-trainer, demonstrate all of the steps of DBS specimen collection listed above. Ask participants to ask questions along the way. <p>Practise in Pairs</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 2. Ask participants to break into pairs for a return demonstration. 3. Distribute the necessary DBS supplies to each pair. 4. Emphasise that the blood collection exercise is just for practise and that the blood specimens will not be tested or given to anyone. They will be destroyed.

	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 5. Emphasise the importance of using universal precautions during this exercise. Hand hygiene with soap and water should be practised. 6. Ask one person in each pair to play the role of the caregiver with the child and the other the role of the healthcare worker. 7. For the purpose of this exercise, blood will be collected from the person playing the caregiver by finger stick (see Appendix 6-A for more on the finger stick technique). 8. The person playing the role of the healthcare worker should go through all of the steps in DBS specimen collection, including filling in the required forms. 9. Once the blood is on the filter paper card, the person playing the healthcare worker should place it on the drying rack and then proceed to prepare it for packaging and transport (including filling out the lab requisition forms) as if it had been dried for the appropriate amount of time. 10. Be sure participants safely dispose of lancets, gauze, etc. 11. Once this process is completed, participants should switch roles and repeat the process using a second, clean set of supplies. 12. Be sure to monitor the practice and provide assistance and support. 13. Once all of the participants have had a chance to practise and all of the materials have been properly disposed of, reconvene the large group.
Debriefing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Ask participants to share their experiences collecting the specimens. ■ If it did not come up already, discuss common mistakes that you (the trainer) observed during the practise session, being careful not to mention specific participants. ■ Discuss how the specimen collection process will be different on an infant. ■ Reassure participants that their specimen collection techniques will improve and become more efficient as they gain experience, including during the practicum session.



Trainer Instructions

Slides 58–60

Step 8:

Review with participants the procedures to follow when test results are received.



Make These Points

- At the time the blood specimen was taken (the pre-test counselling session), the healthcare worker should ensure that the caregiver knows when to return for the test results.
- Test results returned from the laboratory should be recorded in the *General Counselling and Testing Register*.
- All test results are presented to the caregiver as part of an individual post-test counselling session, as described in Module 5. The child's *Under-Five Card* should also be updated at this time.
- If the scheduled follow-up date is several weeks away, a healthcare worker should attempt to contact the caregivers of children testing positive and ask them to come to the clinic at their earliest convenience. Because HIV can progress rapidly in infants and children, delaying ART even a few weeks can make a difference.

Receiving DNA PCR results

Receiving HIV test results: When results return from the laboratory, they should be recorded in the *General Counselling and Testing Register* as soon as possible. The DNA PCR test result is always given as part of the HIV post-test counselling session, which also includes information about safer infant feeding (see Module 5).

If the scheduled follow-up date is several weeks away, a healthcare worker should attempt to contact the caregivers of children testing positive by DNA PCR and ask them to come to the clinic at their earliest convenience. Although all children and caregivers must be encouraged to return for results and for post-test counselling, return of those who test DNA PCR-positive should be expedited to facilitate referral into care, treatment and support. Because HIV can progress rapidly in infants and children, delaying ART even a few weeks can make a difference to an infant's chances of survival.

Indeterminate results: If the lab requests another specimen because of an inconclusive test result, find out the reason for the request, i.e., if the test was borderline or if the specimen was collected incorrectly. Contact parents or caregivers and ask them to return with their child for re-testing. Explain the reason for the repeat test, reassure them of the benefits of early HIV testing and make an appointment for the return visit. CTX should be continued for infants or children with indeterminate results and parents or caregivers should continue to receive counselling on safer infant feeding.

Follow-up care: Children who test DNA PCR-negative should be counselled and encouraged to return to the health facility for all routine

immunisation visits and three months after complete cessation of breastfeeding for final determination of infection status.

Update *Under-Five Card* and *General Counselling and Testing Register*: Enter the HIV test result on the infant's *Under-Five Card*. After the session, enter the post-test counselling date in the *General Counselling and Testing Register* and document the result in the medical record.

Also refer to the testing algorithms in Chapter 4 of the National Paediatric PITC Guidelines.



Trainer Instructions

Slides 61–66

Step 9: Allow five minutes for questions and answers on this session.

Step 10: Summarise this module by reviewing the key points in the slides and box below.



Module 6: Key Points

- When taking a blood sample for any paediatric diagnostic test, in this case HIV antibody or HIV DNA PCR, the location of the puncture site (heel, toe or finger) is determined by the age and weight of the child.
- The first line HIV rapid antibody test is the Determine antibody test. A positive test result will indicate HIV-exposure in children less than 18 months of age. A child in this age group with a positive test requires testing with DNA PCR to determine HIV infection status.
- For children 18 months or older, a positive HIV antibody test result will necessitate confirmatory testing with the Uni-Gold antibody test. The third line test, used as the tie-breaker, is Bioline.
- DNA PCR allows the diagnosis of HIV in infants as young as four weeks of age, making possible the provision of life-saving care and treatment as soon as possible.
- DNA PCR testing is widely available across the country due to a process referred to as DBS testing. The advantages of using DBS include:
 - Specimen collection is easier and requires less training.
 - Specimens have a longer lifespan, are stable and therefore easier to transport and store making possible centralised testing.
 - Because specimens are dried, they pose little biohazard risk.
- Proper collection, documentation, drying, and storage of DBS specimens are key to ensuring that the specimen can be analysed; mislabelling specimens is the most common error reported with DNA PCR testing.
- It is important to track receipt of DNA PCR test results.
- Post-test counselling is required for all test results, whether positive or negative.

Appendix 6-A How to Conduct a Finger-Prick Blood Draw



Always use universal precautions



World Health Organization

April 2004



1. Collect supplies.



2. Position hand palm-side up. Choose whichever finger is least calloused.



3. Apply intermittent pressure to the finger to help the blood to flow.



4. Clean the fingertip with alcohol. Start in the middle and work outward to prevent contaminating the area. Allow the area to dry.



5. Hold the finger and firmly place a new sterile lancet off-center on the fingertip.



6. Firmly press the lancet to puncture the fingertip.



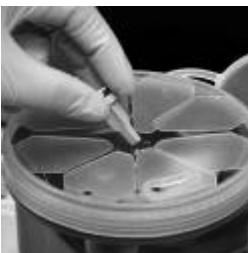
7. Wipe away the first drop of blood with a sterile gauze pad or cotton ball.



8. Collect the specimen. Blood may flow best if the finger is held lower than the elbow.



9. Apply a gauze pad or cotton ball to the puncture site until the bleeding stops.



10. Properly dispose of all contaminated supplies.

Appendix 6-B How to Conduct Uni-Gold Recombigen® HIV Rapid Antibody Test

Step 1: Collect supplies

Supplies for conducting a finger prick

- Sterile lancets (2 mm long)
- Sterile gauze pads or cotton wool
- Alcohol wipes or disinfectant for skin (70% spirit)

Supplies for paperwork

- Pen
- *General Counselling and Testing Register, Under-Five Card*

Safety supplies

- Gloves (powder-free preferred)
- Rubbish bin
- Sharps container

Testing items

- One Uni-Gold™ test device (There are 20 individually pouched test devices per test kit.)
- One disposable pipette (There are 20 pipettes per test kit.)
- Wash solution (5.0 ml)
- Timer or stopwatch

Step 2: Use universal precautions

Always use universal precautions when collecting blood specimens. These include:

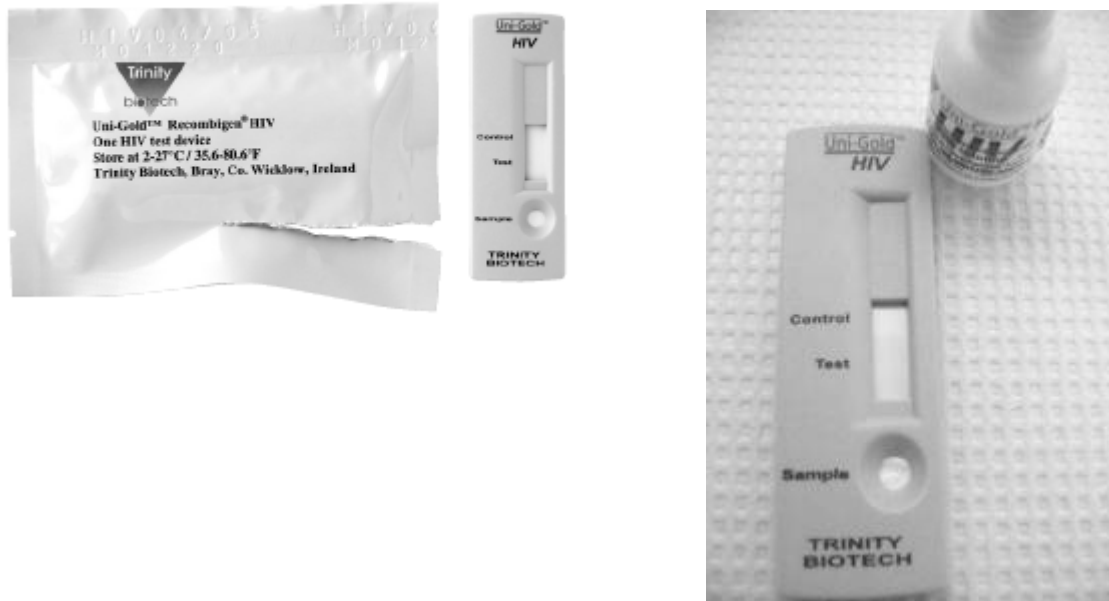
- Treat all blood specimens as if they are infectious.
- Wash hands and dry them thoroughly before performing procedures.
- Put on gloves before coming in contact with blood and other body fluids or items that may be contaminated with blood or body fluids.
- Take precautions to avoid needle injury and handle all sharps with extreme care.
- Wash hands immediately after removing gloves.
- Promptly clean up any spills of infective material with a disinfectant such as a 0.5% dilution of household chlorine bleach³.
- Dispose of contaminated sharps and waste appropriately.
- In the event of a sharps injury, follow the protocol at the facility for post-exposure prophylaxis.

³ A 0.5% solution of household chlorine bleach can be made by mixing 6 parts water to 1 part 3.5% chlorine bleach. A “part” is any unit of measure (e.g., teaspoon, cup, litre or anything else).

Step 3: Check and prepare test items

Always check the test device before using to ensure the items have not expired or been damaged. Allow the test device and wash solution to reach room temperature (15-27°C) for at least 20 minutes before use. Use one test device per test. Label the test device with the client identification number.

Pull off the protective foil cover and lay the device on a clean flat surface.



Step 4: Choose the puncture site

Once the test device is ready, the healthcare worker can take the blood sample. The next step is to choose the puncture site.

The puncture site will depend on the age and weight of the child.

- **Small infants ≤9 kg: prick the heel.** The heel is the only suitable puncture site for very young or very small infants because there is a risk of hitting the bone when puncturing fingers or the toes. Heel puncture should be performed on the plantar surface of the heel, beyond the lateral and medial limits of the heel bone. The suitable areas are marked by the grey shaded areas in the Figure 6.1. Choose the lowest point in recommended area. The back of the heel and the Achilles tendon are **not** suitable sites and should not be punctured.
- **Children >9 kg: prick the big toe.** Fingers and small toes should still be avoided because of the risk of hitting bone.
- **Children over 2 years old: prick the finger.** The best finger is the ring (fourth) finger on the left hand as this finger is typically the least used by the child. Select the lateral side of the fingertip. Do not stick the very end of the finger where the bone is close to the skin. The thumb is not recommended because it is the most painful. Refer to Appendix 6-A.

Step 5: Demonstrate to caregiver how to hold the child for the procedure

- Children less than two years of age: ask the caregiver to sit holding the baby in an upright position against her or his chest (as shown in photo to right and in Appendix 6-D). Position the infant with her or his foot hanging downward. This will increase venous pressure and will help the blood flow more easily.
- Children two years old or greater: the child may sit on her or his own or on the caregiver's lap. Have the child rest her or his hand on a horizontal surface such as counter, table or desk.
- Ask the caregiver to hold the child securely so that the blood sample can be taken.



Step 6: Prepare the puncture site

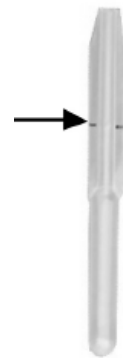
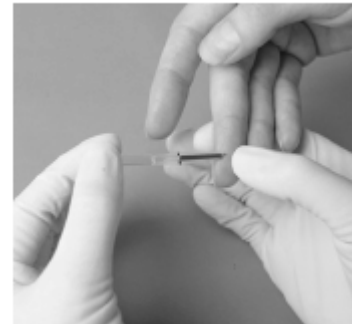
- If the child's finger or foot is not clean it should be washed with soap and clean water.
- Warm the site to increase blood supply. The parent or caregiver can do this by holding the child's hand and rubbing gently.
- Wash hands and put on powder-free gloves. If powdered gloves are being used, rinse glove-covered hands after putting them on to remove the powder.
- Clean the child's fingertip (or foot) with alcohol. Start in the middle and work outward to prevent contaminating the area. Allow the area to dry.

Step 7: Collect the specimen

- Encourage the caregiver to comfort the child during the procedure, if needed. In younger children, comforting reduces distress and makes it easier for the child to be calm. For infants and very young children, ask the caregiver to hold the child securely so that the blood sample can be taken.
- Hold the child's finger, toe or heel; firmly puncture the site off-centre with a new sterile 2 mm lancet. A 2 mm lancet is the correct length to puncture safely without damaging bone. **Do not use a needle, scalpel or longer lancet.** The puncture should be with one continuous, deliberate motion at an angle (slightly less than 90 degrees).



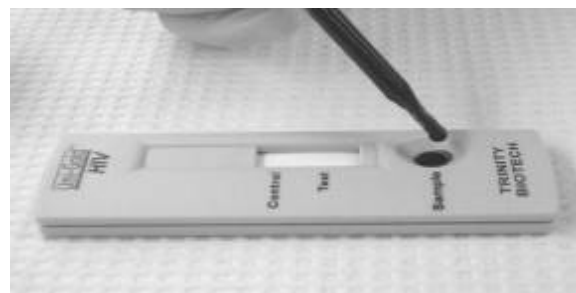
- Allow a large blood drop to form and wipe it away with a dry, sterile gauze pad. The first drop of blood may contain tissue fluids that could contaminate the specimen.
- Allow a second, large blood drop to form. Blood may flow best if the finger is held lower than the elbow.
- Hold the disposable pipette provided in the test kit gently in a horizontal position to collect the sample. This is important, as the specimen may not be adequately drawn in the pipette if the pipette is held in a vertical position.
- Place the tip of the pipette into the sample, taking care not to squeeze the bulb. Maintain this position until the flow of sample into the pipette has stopped. The sample should fill to the mark on the pipette.
- If the sample is not collected to the mark, the pipette should be discarded and another specimen should be collected from another finger by repeating the sample collection process.
- Apply a gauze pad to the puncture site until the bleeding stops.
- Discard gauze in a bin and lancet in sharps container after use.



**Pipette and mark
for sample**

Step 8: Transfer specimen to test device

- Squeeze the pipette bulb until the blood sample is fully discharged onto the test device sample port. Should the blood sample not fully discharge from the pipette, cover the small opening at the mark on the pipette with gloved fingers then squeeze the bulb again. Squeeze the bulb until the blood sample is fully discharged.
- Allow the blood sample to absorb into the paper in the sample port.
- Ensure air bubbles are not introduced into the sample port.
- Discard pipette in sharps container and gloves in bin after use.



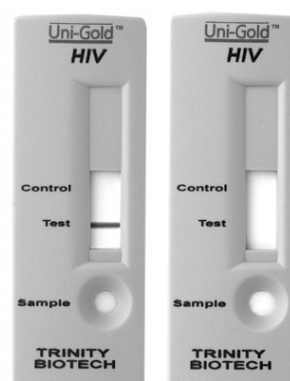
Step 9: Add wash solution wait for test result

- Add four drops of wash solution to the sample port.
- Wait 10 minutes and then read the test result. Do not wait more than 12 minutes to read the results. If the test is not read between 10-12 minutes repeat the test on new test device.



Step 10: Read the results

- Check if test results are valid. For a test result to be valid the sample port must contain red color AND a control line must also be present. If no red color is seen in the sample port OR there is no control line, repeat the test with a fresh test device.
- The photo to the right shows an invalid result.
- The test is negative if (see photo to right):
 1. A line of any intensity appears in the device window adjacent to the word "Control" AND
 2. A full red colour appears in the sample port, BUT
 3. No line appears in the device window adjacent to the word "Test".
- The test is positive if these three conditions are met (see photo to right):
 1. A line of any intensity appears in the test device window next to the word "Test" AND
 2. A second line of any intensity appears adjacent to the word "Control" AND
 3. A full red colour appears in the sample port.



Step 11: Record the results

- Record the test results and other pertinent information on the child's *Under-Five Card*, the *General Counselling and Testing Register* and in the patient file. If testing the mother, record results on the *Mother's Card*, the *General Counselling and Testing Register* and the medical record (mother and child).
- Discard supplies, following universal precautions.

Appendix 6-C How to Conduct Bioline HIV - 1/2 Rapid Antibody Test for Confirmatory Testing²

Step 1: Collect supplies

Supplies for performing finger or heel prick

- Sterile lancets (2 mm long)
- Sterile gauze pads or cotton wool
- Alcohol wipes or disinfectant for skin (70% spirit)

Supplies for paperwork

- Pen
- *General Counselling and Testing Register*

Safety supplies

- Gloves (powder-free preferred)
- Rubbish bin
- Sharps container

Testing items

- One Bioline HIV-1/2 3.0 test device, which contains the following items to conduct the assay (there are 30 devices per test kit):
 - Test device in individual foil pouch with a desiccant
 - Assay diluents
 - 20ml capillary pipettes*
 - Lancets*
 - Package insert
- *Capillary pipettes and lancets will need to be purchased separately if not included.
- Timer or stopwatch



Step 2: Use universal precautions

Always use universal precautions when collecting blood specimens. These include:

- Treat all blood specimens as if they are infectious.
- Wash hands and dry them thoroughly before performing procedures.
- Put on gloves before coming in contact with blood and other body fluids or items that may be contaminated with blood or body fluids.
- Take precautions to avoid needle injury and handle all sharps with extreme care.
- Wash hands immediately after removing gloves.
- Promptly clean up any spills of infective material with a disinfectant such as a 0.5% dilution of household chlorine bleach⁴.
- Dispose of contaminated sharps and waste appropriately.
- In the event of a sharps injury, follow the protocol at the facility for post-exposure prophylaxis.

Step 3: Check and prepare test items

- Always check the test device before using to ensure the items have not expired or been damaged.
- Bring assay diluent and test devices to the correct temperature (leave three hours at room temperature (18°-25°C), or for 15 minutes at 37°C). Do not refrigerate or freeze the test kit.
- Use one test device per test.
- Remove the test device from the foil pouch.

Step 4: Choose the puncture site

Once the test device has been prepared, the healthcare worker is ready to take the blood sample. The next step is to choose the puncture site.

Infants up to two years old

- **Small infants ≤9 kg: prick the heel.** The heel is the only suitable puncture site for very young or very small infants because there is a risk of hitting the bone when puncturing fingers or the toes. Heel puncture should be performed on the plantar surface of the heel, beyond the lateral and medial limits of the heel bone (See Figure 6.1 and Appendix 6-D). Choose the lowest point in recommended area. The back of the heel and the Achilles tendon are **not** suitable sites and should not be punctured.
- **Larger infants >9 kg: prick the heel or lateral aspect of the big toe.** Fingers and small toes should still be avoided because of the risk of hitting bone.

Children two years old or greater

- Position the child's hand palm-side up.
- The best finger to use is the ring (fourth) finger on the left hand as this finger is typically the least used by the infant. The side of the finger is

⁴ A 0.5% solution of household chlorine bleach can be made by mixing 6 parts water to 1 part 3.5% chlorine bleach. A "part" is any unit of measure (e.g., teaspoon, cup, litre or anything else).

generally less sensitive than the tip of the finger. Do not stick the very end of the finger where the bone is close to the skin. The thumb is not recommended because it is the most painful. Refer to Appendix 6-A.

Step 5: Demonstrate to caregiver how to hold the child for the procedure

- Children less than two years of age: ask the caregiver to sit holding the baby in an upright position against her or his chest (as shown in photo to right and in Appendix 6-D). Position the infant with her or his foot hanging downward. This will increase venous pressure and will help the blood flow more easily.
- Children two years old or greater: the child may sit on her or his own or on the caregiver's lap. Have the child rest her or his hand on a horizontal surface such as counter, table or desk.
- Ask the caregiver to hold the child securely so that the blood sample can be taken.



Step 6: Prepare the puncture site

- If the child's finger or foot is not clean it should be washed with soap and clean water.
- Warm the site to increase blood supply. The parent or caregiver can do this by holding the child's hand or foot and rubbing gently.
- Wash hands and put on powder-free gloves. If powdered gloves are being used, rinse glove-covered hands after putting them on to remove the powder.
- Clean the child's fingertip (or foot) with alcohol. Start in the middle and work outward to prevent contaminating the area. Allow the area to dry.



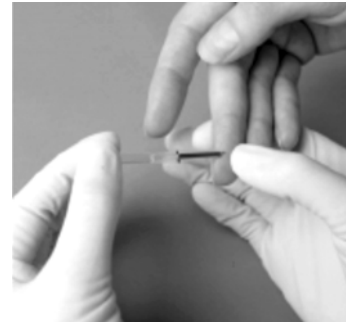
Step 7: Collect the specimen

- Encourage the caregiver to comfort her or his child during the procedure. Comforting reduces distress and makes it easier for the child to remain calm after the procedure. Ask the caregiver to hold the child securely so that the blood sample can be taken.
- Hold the child's finger or foot; firmly puncture the site off-centre with a new sterile 2 mm lancet. A 2 mm lancet is the



correct length to puncture safely without damaging bone. **Do not use a needle, scalpel or longer lancet.** The puncture should be with one continuous, deliberate motion at an angle (slightly less than 90 degrees).

- Allow a large blood drop to form and wipe it away with dry, sterile gauze. The first drop of blood may contain tissue fluids that could contaminate the specimen.
- Allow a second, large blood drop to form. Blood may flow best if the finger is held lower than the elbow or, if collecting from the heel or toe, the child should be held upright with the foot hanging down.
- Hold the disposable pipette gently in a horizontal position to collect the sample. This is important as the specimen may not be adequately drawn in the pipette if the pipette is held in a vertical position.
- Place the tip of the pipette into the sample, taking care not to squeeze the bulb. Maintain this position until the flow of sample into the pipette has stopped. The sample should fill to the mark on the pipette, 20ml. If the sample is not collected to the mark, the pipette should be discarded and another specimen should be collected from another finger by repeating the sample collection process.
- Apply a gauze pad to the puncture site until the bleeding stops.
- Discard gauze in a bin and lancet in sharps container after use.



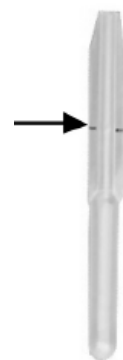
Step 8: Conduct the test

Conducting the test procedure involves five steps.

- Using the pipette, add 20ml of drawn blood specimen into the sample well.
- Add **EXACTLY FOUR** drops of assay diluent into sample well.



- As the test begins to work, you will see purple colour move across the result window in the centre of the test device.
- Interpret results in 5-20 minutes.
- Negative results should be finally interpreted at 20 minutes. Do **NOT** read results after 20 minutes, as reading too late can give false results.



Pipette and mark for sample

Step 9: Read and record the results

Check if test results are valid:

- For a test result to be valid an internal control line (C) should appear on the device.

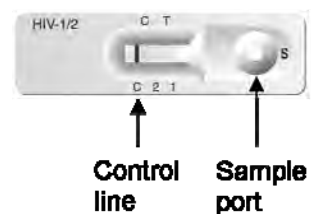
Invalid result

- The absence of the control line (C) within the result window indicates an invalid result. The directions may not have been properly followed or the test may have deteriorated. It is recommended that the specimen be re-tested using a new test device.
- The photo to the right shows an invalid result.



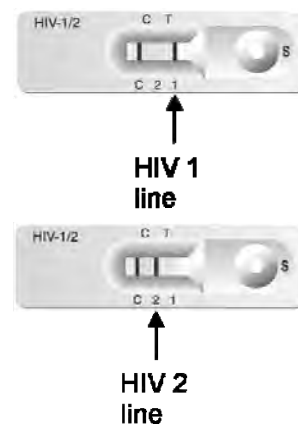
Negative result (see photo to right)

- The presence of only the control line (C) within the result window indicates a negative result.



Positive result (see photo to right)

- The presence of two lines — control line (C) and the test line 1 — within the result window indicates a positive result for HIV-1.
- The presence of two lines — control line (C) and test line 2 — within the result window indicates a positive result for HIV-2.
- The presence of three lines — control line (C), test line 1 and test line 2 — within the result window indicates a positive result for HIV-1 and/or HIV-2.
 - If the colour intensity of the test line 1 is darker than one of test line 2 in the result window, you can interpret the result as HIV-1 positive.
 - If the colour intensity of the test line 2 is darker than the one of test line 1 in the result window, you can interpret the result as HIV-2 positive.



Record test results:

- Record the test results and other pertinent information in the *General Counselling and Testing Register*, *Under-Five Card* and all other appropriate forms.

Appendix 6-D DBS Collection, Storing, Drying and Packaging

Steps 1–4 (Panel 1 of Dried Blood Spot Collection Poster*)

1. Fill out appropriate forms.

- Fill out DNA PCR Laboratory Requisition Form. Keep a copy for your records.

District Code Facility Code Patient #

NAME JP40 40-133-00001-1

DATE 15/4/2006

DOB: 01/01/2006

Facility: Kalingalinga HC

District: Lusaka

①

- Fill out the filter paper card as shown.
- Do not touch or spill anything on the filter paper.

2. Choose the puncture site; warm the site.

- In small infants (≤ 9 kg) use the heel.
- In larger infants (>9 kg) use the heel or use the lateral aspect of the big toe.
- Warm the puncture site with your hand.



3. Have the caregiver hold the child with the foot down and the heel outward.



4. Puncture the site.

- Use Universal Precautions.
- Clean the puncture site with alcohol swab. Let dry for 30 seconds.
- Press lancet to prick the skin.
- Wipe away the first drop of blood.



* Please note that steps on the poster are a summary of the steps detailed in this module and therefore step numbers may not be the same.

Steps 5–6 (Panel 2 of Dried Blood Spot Collection Poster*)

5. Collect the DBS specimen.

- Allow a second, large drop to form.
- Touch drop to filter paper card. Fill entire circle with the drop.
- Fill all 5 circles completely. Use only one drop to fill a circle; do not layer with multiple drops.
- If blood flow stops, gently massage the lower leg. Do not squeeze the foot.
- Clean the puncture site with a sterile swab. No plaster is needed.



6. Check the filter paper card to ensure the sample is valid and that the lab requisition form is completed correctly.

VALID sample
At least 3 good spots must be obtained; samples should fill or almost fill the circles.

INVALID samples

A – Poor collection technique.

B – Too much blood.

C – Serum rings or contaminated blood.

D – Layered or clotted blood.

E – Not enough blood.

F – Blood not dried before mailing.

Whatman 903® Lot No. L6190209

Whatman 903® Lot No. L6190205

* Please note that steps on the poster are a summary of the steps detailed in this module and therefore step numbers may not be the same.

Steps 7–9 (Panel 3 of Dried Blood Spot Collection Poster*)

7. Air dry the specimen for at least 3 hours.

- Keep away from direct sunlight, dust and insects.
- Do not heat, stack or allow DBS specimen to touch anything while drying.
- Keep the lab requisition form near the filter paper card.
- Dry completely before packaging.



8. Stack dry filter paper cards between sheets of glassine paper and insert into sealable plastic bag.

- Add at least one desiccant packet for each card.
- Add humidity indicator card.
- Remove air and seal plastic bag.



9. Prepare samples and documentation for transport.

- Fill in Specimen Delivery Checklist. Keep a copy for your records.
- Confirm that all specimens are recorded in the clinic or ward logbook.
- Insert plastic bag and lab requisition form into envelope.
- Insert Specimen Delivery Checklist.
- Seal envelope.
- Clearly label envelope "Infant Specimens".
- Send to designated laboratory.

* Please note that steps on the poster are a summary of the steps detailed in this module and therefore step numbers may not be the same.

Appendix 6-E DNA PCR Specimen Delivery Checklist and DNA PCR Laboratory Requisition Form

DNA PCR Specimen Delivery Checklist												
Site: <input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>						Date: <input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>						
<p>Clinic Instructions:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Fill out <u>Patient ID</u> as samples are collected 2. Check off boxes under <u>Specimen sent</u> when samples are dispatched 3. Sign the bottom of the form once completed <p>Laboratory Instructions:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 4. Check off boxes under <u>Specimen received</u> column when samples are received at testing laboratory 5. Keep form on record at laboratory 												
<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: fit-content; margin: 0 auto;"> Dried Human Blood Spots – non infectious, non contagious. Contains no animal products. Reason for transportation – Diagnosis. </div>												
+	Patient ID					Specimen sent	Specimen received					
1	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>					<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>					
2	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>					<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>					
3	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>					<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>					
4	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>					<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>					
5	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>					<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>					
6	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>					<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>					
7	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>					<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>					
8	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>					<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>					
9	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>					<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>					
10	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>					<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>					
11	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>					<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>					
12	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>					<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>					
13	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>					<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>					
Signature & date of individual <u>completing</u> this form: _____												
Signature & date of individual <u>receiving</u> this form: _____												

White Copy and Blue Copy – to the referral laboratory
Pink Copy – to be retained by the requesting site



Republic of Zambia
Ministry of Health

DNA PCR Test - Laboratory Requisition Form

Province _____ District _____

Facility _____ Ward _____

Patient ID No. _____ Patient Name _____ Age _____ Sex _____

Mother's ID No. _____ Patient Caretaker's Phone No. _____

Patient Caretaker's Address _____

Requesting Officer _____

Referral Lab for Sample (Tick one) Arthur Davison Kalingalinga UTH Other _____

Please also provide the information requested below (Tick as appropriate)

1	Child's HIV Rapid Test Result	<input type="checkbox"/> Reactive	<input type="checkbox"/> Non Reactive	<input type="checkbox"/> Indeterminate	<input type="checkbox"/> Unknown
	Mother's HIV Status	<input type="checkbox"/> Positive	<input type="checkbox"/> Negative	<input type="checkbox"/> Unknown	
2	PMTCT Intervention Given to Mother	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes	<input type="checkbox"/> No		
3	PMTCT Intervention Given to Child	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes	<input type="checkbox"/> No		
4	Infant Still Breastfeeding	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes	<input type="checkbox"/> No	If no, weeks since cessation _____	<input type="checkbox"/> Never breastfed
5	PCR Test Performed on Child Before	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes	<input type="checkbox"/> No	If yes, date PCR test done _____	

Sample Collected By:

Name _____ Designation _____

Signature _____ Date Collected ____ / ____ / ____

FOR LABORATORY USE ONLY

Patient Laboratory No. _____ Date Test Received at Lab ____ / ____ / ____

Date Test Performed ____ / ____ / ____

PCR LABORATORY RESULTS (Tick as appropriate) Detected Not Detected Sample Rejected

Signed _____ Counter Signed _____

Comments (including reason for rejection, if applicable) _____

Note: The form must be completely filled in and data on this form must tally with that on the DBS sample card in order for the sample to be worked on.

Appendix 6-F Documentation of Rapid Testing in the Under-Five Card

CHILDREN'S CLINIC CARD

CHILD'S PARTICULARS

Name of Health Facility

Child's No. _____

Child's Name: _____ Boy/Girl

Mother's or Guardian's Name: _____ NRC no. _____

Father's or Guardian's Name: _____ NRC no. _____

Date first seen: _____ Date of Birth: _____ Birth No. _____

Place of Birth: _____

Where the family lives: address _____

IMMUNISATION RECORD

IMMUNISATION against Tuberculosis (TB) BCG (at birth) Date: _____

IMMUNISATION against Polio (OPV), Diphtheria, Whooping Cough, Tetanus, Hib, Hepatitis B, Meningitis, Pneumococcal (at birth) Hib & Shingles

PMCT

Test by: _____

DATE	PCR	R	NR	I
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____

MGA IGA

MONITORING OF INFANT AND YOUNG CHILD FEEDING

Follow up time	Birth	6 Days	6W	1M	3M	3M	4M	5M	6M
Infant feeding code									
Follow up time	7M	8M	9M	10M	11M	12M	15M	18M	24M
Infant feeding code									

Feeding Code:

- 1) Exclusive breast feeding (in the first 6 months, breast-feeding only, no water, no other fluids except medicines indicated by medical personnel)
- 2) Exclusive Alternative Infant Formula
- 3) Animal Milk
- 4) Mixed feeding (breast milk and other foods)
- 5) Continued breast feeding after six months in addition to other foods
- 6) Milk based food after six months in addition to other foods
- 7) Other, specify _____

References and Resources

Republic of Zambia Ministry of Health. (2009). Dried Blood Spot Collection Technique (Poster).

Republic of Zambia Ministry of Health. (2007). Dried Blood Spot for DNA PCR Testing Health Facility Handbook, 1st edition.

Republic of Zambia Ministry of Health. (2009). National Guidelines for Paediatric Provider-initiated HIV Testing and Counselling.

¹ Inverness Medical. Determine HIV-1/2. Package Insert available at:
<http://www.determinetest.com/downloads.aspx>

² Standard Diagnostic, Inc. 2008. "SD BIOLINE HIV-1/2 3.0" Package insert.
[http://standardia.com/default/product_en/download.asp?idx=15&strCategory1=01&strCategory2=01&strFileName=03FK10_HIV\(D\)%20CE%20Inser.pdf&strProductName=Anti-HIV-1/2%20&strFile=PackageInsert](http://standardia.com/default/product_en/download.asp?idx=15&strCategory1=01&strCategory2=01&strFileName=03FK10_HIV(D)%20CE%20Inser.pdf&strProductName=Anti-HIV-1/2%20&strFile=PackageInsert)

Module 7 Ongoing Care, Treatment and Supportive Counselling for the Child and Family



Total Module Time: 180 minutes (3 hours)

Learning Objectives

After completing this module, participants will be able to:

- Understand the importance of linking mothers, caregivers and their children to HIV-related care, treatment and support.
- Understand the range of clinical care services needed for HIV-exposed and HIV-infected children, including ART, and provide referrals for these services.
- Understand the importance of ongoing psychosocial support, particularly in reference to adherence and disclosure.

Methodologies



- Interactive trainer presentation
- Case studies
- Discussion
- Game

Materials Needed



- Flip chart
- Markers
- Tape or Bostik
- Referral forms used in the hospital, clinic and community facilities
- The trainer should have the slide set for Module 7.
- Participants should have their Participant Manuals. The Participant Manual contains background technical content and information for the exercises, including the case studies.

References and Resources



- National Guidelines for Paediatric Provider-initiated HIV Testing and Counselling
- Zambian Guidelines for Antiretroviral Therapy of HIV Infection in Infants and Children
- Republic of Zambia, Ministry of Health. Paediatric HIV Care Training Course

Advance Preparation



- Exercises 1 and 2 require advance preparation. Please review the exercises ahead of time.
- Collect any referral forms used in the hospital or clinic — both for clinical and community-based services.
- Review the appendices in this module ahead of time and prepare to incorporate them into the discussion.

Session 7.1: Clinical Care for HIV-exposed and HIV-infected Children

Activity/Method	Time
Interactive trainer presentation (Slides 1-27)	45 minutes
Exercise 1: Making referrals for ongoing care: Case studies in small groups and large group discussion (Slides 28-29)	45 minutes
Questions and answers	5 minutes
Total Session Time	95 minutes

Session 7.2: Psychosocial Support and Counselling for Mothers, Caregivers and Children

Activity/Method	Time
Interactive trainer presentation (Slides 31-39)	10 minutes
Exercise 2: Clarification of values — HIV disclosure to children, Game (Slides 40-41)	40 minutes
Interactive trainer presentation (Slides 42-48)	20 minutes
Questions and answers	5 minutes
Review of key points (Slides 50-53)	10 minutes
Total Session Time	85 minutes

Session 7.1

Clinical Care for HIV-exposed and HIV-infected Children



Total Session Time: 95 minutes



Trainer Instructions

Slides 1-2

Step 1: Begin by reviewing the Module 7 Learning Objectives (page 7-1) and the Session Objectives, listed below.

Session Objectives

After completing this session, participants will be able to:

- Understand the importance of linking mothers, caregivers and their children to HIV-related care, treatment and support.
- Understand the range of clinical care services needed for HIV-exposed and HIV-infected children, including ART, and provide referrals for these services.



Trainer Instructions

Slides 3-8

Step 2: Remind participants that this module will be a short overview of caring for HIV-exposed and HIV-infected children and their families. For more information, refer participants to the National Paediatric HIV Care Training Course.

Ask participants:

- *Why is it important to link the children we test to ongoing HIV care and treatment?*
- *What is family centred-care and how does it affect the referrals we make?*

Once participants have had a chance to discuss the importance of ongoing care, review the referral forms used at the health facility (if none are used yet, then go through the referral and follow-up forms in Appendices 7-A and 7-B.) Then, review the 12 key components of paediatric HIV care.



Make These Points

- Knowing when and how to make referrals for HIV care and treatment is a critical part of post-test counselling and follow-up for children, mothers and caregivers.
- As healthcare workers, responsibilities do not end with delivery of the child's HIV test results. Instead, it must be ensured that the child, the mother and family get the ongoing clinical care and support they need.

Linking Caregivers, Children and Families to Comprehensive HIV Care and Treatment

Paediatric PITC does NOT end with the delivery of HIV test results. Post-test counselling and follow-up include guidance on the next steps and provision of, or referrals to, needed services, especially for children living with HIV and their caregivers. To consider paediatric testing programmes successful, HIV-exposed and HIV-infected children and their mothers must be linked to and enrolled in lifesaving care and treatment. The health of the child is closely linked to the health of the mother, on whom the child depends. Providing additional family members access to testing and care is also a priority. Without these linkages, paediatric PITC is incomplete.

Maximising Family Health and Well-being

Family-centred care ensures that the child, as well as her or his family, receives appropriate services that help preserve the integrity of the family. A family-centred approach will benefit families when there is open and honest exchange of information about the child's health status. Although the focus of paediatric PITC is on identifying children for care and treatment, healthcare workers should be alert to signs that the caregiver and other members of the family are also in need of healthcare services.

When linking families to comprehensive care and treatment, remember the importance of providing family-centred care:

- Family-centred care is the assessment of a child as a part of a family. Family members include those identified by the parent or other caregiver and may include blood relations, in-laws or friends or other household members.
- As the primary relationship, the mother-child bond is critical to the child's health. It is especially critical that the mother, upon whom the child is dependent for care, is enrolled into care and receiving the care and treatment she needs to maintain good health. If the mother (or other caregiver) is not well, the child's health will suffer.
- Family-centred care also refers to including family members in decisions about treatment, care and support — where this is the wish of the caregiver(s).

Services for the family might include providing testing and counselling services, referrals to care and treatment for HIV-infected family members, adherence preparation and support, preventive counselling, infant feeding counselling, psychosocial support and coordination of services and support interventions for the family. If appropriate services are not available at the facility, referrals should be made. If working within a multidisciplinary team, communicate with the other members of the team for a well-rounded perspective of the needs and care of the child.

Using Referral Forms

Referrals and follow-up are a critical component of ensuring that children and their families receive appropriate care. The healthcare worker should assess the patient's needs, plan the referral, assist patients to access services (for example, by helping the patient make the appointment and resolving transportation or other possible barriers to attendance), document the referral and follow up to ensure that the patient attends the appointment. If the patient does not attend appointments, barriers to access should be re-evaluated and support offered. Forms to assist with referral, follow-up and discontinuation of care are shown in Appendices 7-A through 7-C, respectively.

Healthcare workers should use a tracking form to check if children and families attend appointments to which they were referred. An example can be seen in Appendix 7-D: Sample Patient Tracking Log.

12 Key Components to Paediatric HIV Care

There are 12 key components to the comprehensive care of HIV-exposed and HIV-infected children. Some of the guidance will be relevant only for children living with HIV; however, the general management issues and provision of services will be applicable for both.

1. Monitor (and record) the child's growth
2. Monitor the child's development
3. Ensure that immunisations are started and completed according to the recommended schedule
4. Confirm HIV status as early as possible
5. Provide prophylaxis for opportunistic infections
6. Treat infections and other HIV-related conditions
7. Conduct disease staging
8. Initiate treatment with ART (if eligible)
9. Monitor ART and support adherence to care and treatment
10. Refer HIV-infected child (and caregiver/family) for needed services
11. Counsel the caregiver and family
12. Provide psychological and psychosocial support



Trainer Instructions

Slides 9-21

Step 3: Ask participants to brainstorm the services needed by HIV-infected and HIV-exposed children under each of the 12 key components to paediatric HIV care, starting with “1. Monitor (and record) the Child’s Growth”. Record important points on flip chart and fill in, as needed, with the information below. Then go onto key components 2 to 12, again recording important points from the discussion on flip chart.



Make These Points

- The goals of care for the HIV-infected child are to promote health and prevent disease progression.
- The goals of caring for HIV-exposed children include early identification of HIV infection, preventing opportunistic infections and maximising family health and well-being.
- History taking, physical examination, staging and laboratory evaluation are critical components in planning the appropriate care for HIV-infected children.
- Even if healthcare workers do not provide direct care to HIV-infected children after testing, they should be aware of the types of services, including ART the child may need. With this knowledge, they can help prepare families and make the necessary referrals.
- Healthcare workers providing paediatric HIV testing and counselling services can help prepare caregivers for the next steps in their own and their child’s care. In some cases, follow-up care may be provided on the same day, by the same healthcare workers. In other cases, families will be referred to other clinics or facilities for services. Healthcare workers can help families access care through careful explanation of the next steps, making referrals and planning for follow-up.

Clinical Care for HIV-infected and HIV-exposed Children

The goals of care for the HIV-infected child are to promote health and prevent disease progression. This is best accomplished by integrating HIV services and primary healthcare, addressing the ordinary threats to the health and well-being of children while at the same time attending to the special circumstances of HIV exposure or infection. A multidisciplinary, family-centred model of care has been shown to be effective for engaging children and their families in the long-term care and management of HIV disease.

Care for HIV-infected and HIV-exposed children is centred around the three objectives listed below¹:

1. *Identifying the HIV-infected child*: Virological testing will help distinguish which HIV-exposed children are HIV-infected.
2. *Preventing opportunistic infections*: All HIV-exposed children should receive prophylactic CTX to prevent Pneumocystis pneumonia (PCP); isoniazid preventive therapy can reduce the risk of tuberculosis.
3. *Maximising family health and well-being*: Enhanced healthcare services for children born to women living with HIV and their families can lead to improved health outcomes for both HIV-infected and HIV-exposed, as well as uninfected children.

Regular follow-up is the backbone to caring for HIV-exposed and HIV-infected children and ensures optimal healthcare and psychosocial support to the family. Children should be seen at the clinic monthly during the first 12 months of life. Because HIV disease progression can be very rapid during this time, a baby who appears well at two months may have many abnormal findings when examined a month later. Each visit should include a history, physical examination, the provision of CTX prophylaxis and an assessment and plan.

Key component areas:

1. Monitor (and Record) the Child's Growth

An adequate rate of growth is the hallmark of good nutritional status and good health in children; growth problems may be indicative of acute and/or chronic health problems. Growth faltering in the HIV-exposed child may indicate the child is HIV-infected. Growth faltering in a child known to be HIV-infected may indicate the need to initiate ART or failure of the regimen if the child is already on treatment. Nutritional interventions should be an integral part of the care of an HIV-exposed or -infected child. Children whose growth is faltering should also be targeted for nutritional assessment and appropriate interventions based on the growth monitoring information.

To ensure that any signs of growth faltering are caught at an early stage, children should be weighed at each visit. The weight should then be plotted on the child's *Under-Five Card* which will allow healthcare workers to know if a child is growing normally or not. When evaluating a child's growth, it is important to look at the trend of the growth line over a period of months and years. Refer to Appendix 7-E for more information on growth monitoring.

For HIV-exposed infants, assess and counsel for safer infant feeding, as discussed in Module 3. Counselling about infant and young child feeding in this context is important not only to ensure the nutritional needs of the child are met and that food preparation is sanitary and safe, but also to minimise the risk of mother-to-child transmission of HIV. All women, whether HIV-negative or HIV-infected, should be encouraged to

exclusively breastfeed for the first six months of life. After six months, complementary foods should be introduced. HIV-infected children should continue breastfeeding to the age of 24 months or beyond. Children who are HIV-uninfected (or who are HIV-exposed and their HIV-status has not yet been confirmed) should continue breastfeeding up to the age of 12 months and then weaned gradually (over a period of one month).

2. Monitor the Child's Development

Children with HIV are at greater risk of developmental abnormalities. Failure to reach developmental milestones or the loss of developmental milestones may be a first sign that a child is HIV-infected. In children known to be HIV-infected, developmental abnormalities may signal advancing HIV disease or an opportunistic infection. Early attention to developmental abnormalities is critical to avoiding permanent disability. Conduct standard developmental assessments regularly to recognise changes and problems early; children living with HIV who have developmental problems generally need immediate HIV treatment and evaluation for OIs. Refer to Appendix 7-F for more information.

3. Ensure that Immunisations are Started and Completed According to the Recommended Schedule

All HIV-exposed or -infected children should undergo the recommended immunisations according to the national EPI programme (see Appendix 7-G) with the following modifications:

- In cases where the child has not received BCG at birth, for example if the child was born with signs or symptoms of HIV infection, if the child's mother has sputum-positive TB at delivery, or if the baby was born at home, then BCG may be given as a catch-up vaccination. When considering BCG vaccination at a later age (re-vaccination for no scar or missed earlier vaccination), exclude those children with symptomatic HIV infection.
- Because of the increased risk of early and severe measles infection, HIV-exposed children who are not severely immunocompromised should receive a dose of standard measles vaccine at 6 months of age with a second dose as soon after the age of 9 months as possible. However, children who are severely immunosuppressed (based on age-specific CD4 lymphocyte) due to HIV infection should not receive measles vaccine until immunological improvement is observed.

4. Confirm HIV Status as Early as Possible

As described throughout this training, children presenting for health services should be routinely offered an HIV test. This is also an opportunity to offer testing to mothers, caregivers and other family members including children. The earlier HIV exposure and HIV infection can be identified, the sooner healthcare workers can begin life-saving care and treatment. It should also be noted that for HIV-exposed children, HIV

testing may be an ongoing process because of the continuing risk of MTCT through breastfeeding or the lack of access to DNA PCR testing.

5. Opportunistic Infection Prophylaxis

CTX prophylaxis has been shown to prevent *Pneumocystis pneumonia* (PCP), toxoplasmosis, possibly malaria and some causes of diarrhoea as well as other infections. PCP is a leading cause of death in HIV-infected children. PCP often strikes children between the ages of three and six months.

HIV-infected children and those whose HIV status have not yet been determined should be given CTX according to the guidelines in Appendix 7-H. Dapsone can be dispensed to children (older than one month of age) who are intolerant to CTX.

CTX prophylaxis should be initiated in:

- All HIV-exposed children starting at six weeks (or as soon as possible thereafter) until the child has been determined to not have HIV.
- All HIV-infected children less than 12 months old, regardless of CD4% or clinical status.
- All children between 12 months and four years old in WHO clinical stage 2, 3 or 4 regardless of CD4%.
- All children who have had an episode of PCP.

See Appendix 7-H for more information on CTX eligibility and dosing.

6. Treat Infections and other HIV-Related Conditions

HIV-infected children are susceptible to common infections and OIs. HIV may alter the presentation and response to conventional therapy. In some cases more aggressive and longer treatment courses may be necessary, as treatment failures are more frequent. For comprehensive guidance concerning childhood infections and opportunistic infections refer to the Integrated Management of Childhood Illnesses (IMCI), originally published by the WHO, which has been adapted for use in Zambia.

7. Conduct Disease Staging

Initial history A comprehensive initial history will facilitate the development of a clinical profile for children entering the programme.

See Appendix 7-I. The initial history should include a review of:

- The birth history and the use of drugs, including ARVs, for prophylaxis.
- The medical history, including HIV-related hospitalisations, illnesses and medication, including previous and/or current ART or ARV prophylaxis, exposure to TB vaccines (i.e., BCG), tuberculosis treatment or prophylaxis and prophylaxis or treatment of opportunistic infections.
- As previously noted, developmental history is also important to a full evaluation.

Interim history: An interim history should be obtained at each follow-up visit. The interim history focuses on new symptoms, pain, adherence, psychosocial and social assessment. The interim history will help the clinician to determine whether there have been changes in the child's health status or changes in the home setting that may affect the child's health.

Physical examination: Each visit should include an assessment of growth. Weight, length and head circumference for children younger than two years of age should be measured at each visit and plotted on age-appropriate growth curves. The height and weight of older children should be recorded and charted regularly. Weight loss or inadequate weight gain can be the first indication of HIV disease progression.

Clinical staging: The initial physical examination should be comprehensive and subsequent exams can be guided by findings on the symptom checklist. Stage according to WHO criteria, as seen in Appendix 7-J. Clinical staging should be done at every clinical visit and will help clinical monitoring of paediatric HIV disease.

Laboratory evaluation and immunologic staging: Once the diagnosis of HIV infection has been confirmed, a complete blood count and CD4 and lymphocyte subsets (count and percent) should be obtained. CD4 cell count and percentage will provide an assessment of the child's level of immune suppression. CD4 cell number and percent should be measured at regular intervals for all children living with HIV.

8. Initiate treatment with ART (if eligible)

- National paediatric ART guidelines are in Appendix 7-K.
- Assess readiness and provide appropriate adherence and psychosocial counselling and support.

9. Monitor ART and Support Adherence to Care and Treatment

- Follow national guidelines for routine follow-up schedule.
- Counsel the caregiver on seeking care when problems or symptoms develop.
- Arrange more frequent follow up, phone support or home visits as needed.
- Assess adherence and provide adherence support at every encounter.

10. Refer HIV-infected Child (and caregiver/family) for Needed Services

- Information, education, counselling and skills development for caregivers
- Psychosocial and community-based support for child and family

- Refer infected child for specialised care as needed
- HIV counselling, testing, care and treatment for parents and siblings

HIV-infected children who are 12 months of age and younger are eligible for immediate ART. Referrals for HIV treatment in infants are urgent.

A well-informed caregiver will help to ensure that the care schedule is followed, so it is critical that this information be clear and understandable. The paediatric ART programme supports the coordination of HIV-specific and routine paediatric care in line with the EPI programme.

11. Counsel the Caregiver and Family

Provide counselling on:

- HIV care and treatment, visit schedule, seeking care in emergencies
- Adherence to treatment
- Managing symptoms and side effects
- Child development/anticipatory guidance
- Optimal and safe feeding and nutrition
- Disclosure
- HIV testing, care and treatment for mother and other family members (as needed)

12. Provide Psychological and Psychosocial Support

- Assess child's needs, including quality of care and support, access to school and recreational/play activities, psychological conditions, disclosure issues, risks of discrimination and stigma.
- Assess caregiver and family needs, including health care, coping, support and guidance, stability of housing and adequacy of income, disclosure and issues related to stigma/discrimination.



Trainer Instructions

Slides 22-27

- Step 4:** Ask participants:
- *How does care of an HIV-infected child differ from care of an HIV-exposed child?*
 - *What elements are the same?*

Review the key points of caring for HIV-infected and HIV-exposed children.

- Step 5:** Ask if any participants are currently providing ART to children. Ask these participants to give a quick overview of ART eligibility in children in Zambia. Fill in as needed, using the information below and highlighting the new policy change that ALL HIV-infected children 12 months of age or younger are to

be started on ART, regardless of clinical stage or CD4%.

Step 6: Review the follow-up schedule for children on ART. Refer participants to Appendices 7-K and 7-L for more information on ART eligibility and paediatric ART regimens.

Step 7: Discuss the importance of also knowing about adult ART as it relates to the family-centred approach. The health of the mother (or other caregiver) is critical to the health and well-being of the child. Other family members in need of care should be treated and referred as needed.



Make These Points

- In children older than 12 months, use clinical and laboratory criteria to determine those who need to initiate ART.
- In a discussion with the family about ART for a child, it is important to select a caregiver who will be responsible for ensuring that the child's medication is administered every day, exactly as prescribed. However, children often have more than one caregiver; all caregivers should be educated and supported in administering medication to the child.
- Care and treatment for the mother and other infected family members should also be a part of treatment planning.

Paediatric ART

The goals of ART for children are similar to those of adults:

- To improve quality of life
- To prolong survival

In children an important third goal of ART is promote or restore normal growth and development.

It is important to start a child of 12 months or younger on ART as soon as HIV infection is identified — HIV disease progression is rapid in infants. Even infants who appear well can become ill quickly and die without early ART. HIV-infected children should be assessed at each visit to see if they meet treatment eligibility criteria.

ART initiation in children over 12 months of age should be guided by clinical and laboratory parameters. In children less than five years of age, use CD4% (rather than absolute CD4) to guide eligibility for ART. For age-specific guidance on when to start treatment in children less than five years of age, see Appendix 7-K.

ART eligibility also depends on the caregiver's understanding and readiness to give ART to the child. Healthcare workers should provide ongoing counselling and education to caregivers (more than one if possible), and ensure that time is always allowed for questions. Healthcare workers can also help link caregivers with appropriate social support to encourage adherence to paediatric ART and also help prepare caregivers for disclosure — to the child, to other family members and community members as appropriate.

General principles for prescribing in children:

ARVs, like all drugs, are prescribed differently in children compared to adults. Because children's bodies are growing, they absorb, break down and excrete drugs at different rates and may need different doses than adults for the same medicines. Dosing for children can be based on either weight or body surface area. As the child grows quickly, the doses must be checked and changed to avoid under-dosing, which may allow early development of resistance.

The underlying principles of ART in children are largely the same as in adults:

- ART is one component of comprehensive HIV care and it works best when the other components are also maximised (prophylaxis, nutrition, etc.).
- Use a combination of ARVs (minimum of three) because combinations have been demonstrated to have durable treatment success. Single-drug or two-drug treatment regimens do not work in the long term and can cause the development of drug resistant strains of HIV.
- Concomitant use of drugs with overlapping toxicities and drug interactions is not recommended.
- Prior to initiation of ART, it is important to address and stabilise co-morbidities (e.g. TB, liver disease, malaria, pneumonia, severe anaemia, etc.).
- Since treatment is life long, it is important to preserve future treatment options.
- Patient and caregiver preparation is critical and maximum adherence is essential for successful ART. Starting ART is usually not so urgent that time for caregiver preparation cannot be allowed.

The best chance of success with ART is the choice of the first-line regimen; the choice of drugs should take into account efficacy, tolerability, dosing schedule, affordability and availability. Regular follow-up and monitoring is essential. ARV drugs are associated with adverse events and drug-drug interactions; treatment should be stopped or changed when necessary. It is also very important to provide continued support to the child, caregivers and other family members.

For a complete guide to ART treatment and clinical follow-up for children, please refer to *Zambia National Guidelines for Antiretroviral Therapy of HIV Infection in Infants and Children*.

Regular Clinical and Laboratory Follow-Up

The follow-up schedule will be determined by the child's age, clinical stage, ART regimen (if any) and immune status. The table below shows a sample follow-up schedule for children, but healthcare workers should refer to the current *Zambia National Guidelines for Antiretroviral Therapy of HIV Infection in Infants and Children* and the child's individual clinical and immunological status.

Table 7.1: Sample follow-up schedule for HIV-infected children

Age	Visit Interval — clinical	Visit interval — labs	Other concurrent services
0-12 months	Monthly	Baseline – CD4, FBC, LFT, RFT Every 3 months – CD4 (FBC, LFT and RFT, as clinically indicated)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Start CTX at 6 weeks ■ Immunisation according to national guidelines ■ IYCF counselling and support ■ Growth and developmental monitoring ■ Neuro-developmental assessment
12-24 months	Every 3 months (more if needed)	Baseline – CD4, FBC, LFT, RFT Every 3 months – CD4 (FBC, LFT and RFT, as clinically indicated)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ CTX ■ Nutrition counselling ■ Growth and developmental monitoring ■ Neuro-developmental assessment
> 24 months; symptomatic but not yet eligible for ART	Every 3 months (more if needed)	Baseline – CD4, FBC, LFT, RFT Every 6 months – CD4 (FBC, LFT and RFT, as clinically indicated)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ CTX ■ Nutrition counselling ■ Growth and developmental monitoring ■ Neuro-developmental assessment
> 24 months; asymptomatic	Every 6 months	Twice a year	
FBC: full blood count; LFT: liver function test; RFT: renal function test			

Caregivers must have a way to contact a member of the healthcare team if the child falls ill between visits. This will allow them to seek advice and arrange to bring the child in for evaluation if needed. Enabling families to obtain both routine and urgent care within the same programme will enhance the overall management of the child's disease.

ART for Adults and Adolescents

When adults meet clinical criteria to start ART, healthcare workers should ensure that they are provided with medications or given referrals, as needed. As previously highlighted, the care and needs of the family members will directly influence the ability of the family to take care of the child:

- Eligibility for ART should be assessed using CD4 count and clinical criteria, as described in the *Zambia National Guidelines for Antiretroviral Therapy*.
- As with children, adherence issues should be discussed, as inconsistent adherence will lead to treatment failure.
- Treatment for adults should also include linkages to other treatment services, such as psychosocial support, as needed.



Trainer Instructions

Slides 28-29

Step 8: Lead participants through Exercise 1, which will provide an opportunity to practise providing information and referrals about ongoing clinical care for children and their caregivers.

Exercise 1: Making referrals for ongoing care	
Case studies in small groups and large group discussion	
Purpose	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ To practise providing information and referrals for ongoing clinical care to HIV-exposed and HIV-infected children and their family members
Duration	45 minutes
Advance Preparation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Read through the case studies below and adapt, as needed, to your local setting.
Introduction	This will be a small group exercise to practise providing information and referrals for ongoing clinical care.
Activities	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Ask participants to break into groups of four. Assign each group one of the case studies below (the case studies also appear in the Participant Manual). 2. Give the small groups about 15 minutes to discuss and prepare key points on their case study, focusing on what information and referrals they would give to the families. 3. Reconvene the large group and ask some of the small groups to present their case study and the key next steps to the large group. 4. Encourage discussion of the case studies, including what other/different information and referrals participants would have provided.
Debriefing	<p>Ask participants:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ <i>What are some of the ways we can help caregivers understand how important it is to seek immediate care for HIV-exposed and HIV-infected children?</i> ▪ <i>What follow-up clinical services do you think could be provided on the same day the child receives her or his HIV test results? Would these be provided by the healthcare workers performing the testing or through referral at your clinic?</i> ▪ <i>How can we be sure that families get the services to which</i>

	<i>we refer them? What are some of the challenges of referrals in your setting? What are some of the solutions?</i>
--	---

Exercise 1: Making referrals for ongoing care**Case studies in small groups and large group discussion****Case study 1:**

Theresa learns that the results of her three-month-old baby's DNA PCR test is positive. You provide post-test counselling, including a discussion of the next steps and referrals for three-month-old Vincent's care.

Case study 2:

Taonga is the caregiver of five-year-old Lesiana. Lesiana was admitted to the hospital with severe diarrhoea and malnutrition. The results of Lesiana's rapid HIV test are positive. As part of post-test counselling, you discuss the next steps for Lesiana's care and provide referrals.

Case study 3:

Mana is the mother of Mumba, an eight-month-old baby. Mumba's rapid test was positive, but his DNA PCR test was negative. Mana is still breastfeeding her baby. As part of post-test counselling, you discuss the next steps for Mana and Mumba and provide referrals.

Exercise 1: Making referrals for ongoing care**Case studies in small groups and large group discussion****Suggested answers to case study questions****Case Study 1:**

- The mother should be asked about her testing status and enrolment in ART. This is important not only for the mother's own health, but to reduce risk of MTCT through breastfeeding.
- Infant feeding should be discussed with Theresa; breastfeeding should continue. Complementary foods are not recommended before the age of six months. Role play with Theresa ways she can resist pressure to mixed feed.
- The baby urgently needs treatment for HIV. He should be immediately referred to the paediatric ART clinic for care and treatment; the healthcare worker needs to monitor and support attendance at the initial ART clinic appointment. Explain that with proper care and treatment her son can live a long, healthy life.
- The baby should be receiving CTX prophylaxis. Check dosage and administration with mother (and other caregivers, as needed). Provide counselling on adherence. The baby should also receive routine primary care (e.g. growth and developmental monitoring, vaccinations, Vitamin A, etc.)
- Recommend HIV testing for any other children or family members.
- The need for psychosocial and practical support should be assessed.

Case Study 2:

- Depending on CD4 count/percentage and/or WHO staging, Lesiana may need ART and CTX prophylaxis. She should be referred for staging and close follow-up. The healthcare worker needs to monitor and support attendance at the initial ART clinic appointment. Explain

that with proper care and treatment, she can live a long, healthy life.

- Based on the results of the child's growth and developmental monitoring, assess nutritional needs and provide support and referrals as appropriate.
- The mother should be asked about her testing status and enrolment in ART.
- The need for testing of other children and family members should be discussed as well as a preliminary discussion of how to speak to Lesiana about her care and treatment.
- The need for psychosocial and practical support should be assessed.

Case Study 3:

- The healthcare worker should have a discussion about Mana's care and the urgent need for evaluating her eligibility for ART (particularly in light of the fact that she is still breastfeeding). Explore Mana's understanding of the situation and her follow-up care. The health of her child will depend on her own health
- ARV prophylaxis for Mumba should be initiated per national guidelines. ART for the mother and ARV prophylaxis for the infant reduce the risk of MTCT. Mumba should continue CTX prophylaxis and should receive routine primary care (e.g. growth and developmental monitoring, vaccinations, Vitamin A, etc.)
- Based on the results of the child's growth and developmental monitoring, assess nutritional needs and provide support and referrals as appropriate.
- Mana should continue ARV prophylaxis for the baby until one week after breastfeeding has ended completely. Breastfeeding should continue until the age of 12 months.
- Recommend HIV testing for any other children or family members.
- The need for psychosocial and practical support should be assessed.



Trainer Instructions

Slide 30

Step 9: Allow five minutes for questions and answers on this session.

Session 7.2 Psychosocial Support and Counselling for Mothers, Caregivers and Children



Total Session Time: 85 minutes



Trainer Instructions

Slide 31

Step 1: Begin by reviewing the Session Objective, listed below.

Session Objective

After completing this session, participants will be able to:

- Understand the importance of ongoing psychosocial support, particularly in reference to adherence and disclosure.



Trainer Instructions

Slides 32-36

Step 2: Ask participants: *What kind of psychosocial support do caregivers need — especially after learning their child is HIV-infected?*

Supplement the discussion as needed using the information below, highlighting the need for healthcare workers to conduct a psychosocial assessment and provide ongoing psychosocial support with their families.



Make These Points

- Counselling is not a one time event, but is a continuous process that usually begins at the first point of contact in the health system. Healthcare workers involved in paediatric PITC may not be engaged in long-term counselling relationships with families, however, they should have some of the basic skills to better interact and provide guidance for their patients.
- It is important to understand that psychosocial issues often differ because of varying needs of the child, the caregiver and the family.

Providing Counselling and Psychosocial Support to Families

Counselling and psychosocial support are integral components of the holistic approach to caring for children and their families affected by HIV. Counselling is a continuous process that usually begins at the first point of contact in the health system and continues through non-health sector support services. Psychosocial issues must be addressed from the perspectives of the child, the caregiver and the healthcare worker. Support for a child and her or his family allows them to build on their strengths and adopt a positive outlook.

Healthcare workers should use their “**Listening and Learning**” skills (see Module 3) when undertaking psychosocial assessments, providing adherence and disclosure counselling.

Psychosocial assessments that identify each family’s strengths and vulnerabilities are an essential component of the comprehensive care of a child living with HIV. Such assessments help the healthcare team plan appropriate psychological interventions. Psychological stresses are heightened at the time of initial diagnosis, during episodes of illness and during terminal illness.

While the healthcare worker engaged in paediatric PITC may not see the psychosocial assessment as a primary responsibility — particularly if she or he works within a care team — she or he should expect to take a role in ensuring all clients have needed psychosocial support. In the absence of a care team, the healthcare worker may be called upon to assist with psychosocial support. Having knowledge of these skills may improve relationships with the family, increase the likelihood that they will access care more frequently and possibly lead to better health outcomes.

Areas of potential need/intervention:

- Psychosocial assessment of anticipated family adaptation
- Coping ability during previous crises, current coping mechanisms
- Child and family’s knowledge and reactions to the disease
- Beliefs, attitudes and expectations regarding treatment and outcome
- History of depression and/or alcohol and non-prescribed drug use
- Nature and stability of residential and occupational arrangements
- Sources of emotional support, including the quality of relationships between family members and other sources of support
- Disclosure issues
- Child care responsibilities, including responsibility for health care visits, medication administration, and feeding
- Socioeconomic status of the family, sources of financial support
- Sociocultural factors or religious beliefs that might affect treatment decisions and adaptation
- History of previous losses
- Health status of family members

In addition, all healthcare workers should expect to conduct or support adherence counselling.



Trainer Instructions

Slides 37-39

Step 3:

Ask participants:

- *What steps are important to help prepare families and caregivers to start taking ART?*
- *How can healthcare workers support paediatric adherence to care and treatment?*

Fill in, as needed, using the information on paediatric adherence below. Remind participants that they should use their “Listening and Learning” skills from Module 3 when providing any counselling, including psychosocial assessments, adherence support and counselling around paediatric disclosure (which is in the next section).



Make These Points

- The adherence strategy for a particular child will have to change as the child ages and develops from childhood into adolescence.
- Adherence support is not a one-time event — it requires careful planning and ongoing follow-up and support from healthcare workers.

Paediatric Adherence

Key points about paediatric adherence:

- Adherence requires both the commitment of a responsible adult and the involvement of the child.
- The child’s developmental stage will influence the extent to which she or he can or will cooperate with taking medications, as will the caregiver-child relationship.
- Paediatric formulations are not always suited for administration to children and young children; they may taste bad or be difficult to swallow.
- Paediatric ART regimens are frequently complex, requiring caregivers to measure liquid formulations, crush pills, open capsules or dissolve tablets in water; doses may increase as the child gains weight. Appendix 7-L notes recommended regimens.
- If more than one caregiver (relatives, nannies, teachers, etc.) looks after the child, this may complicate both administration and assessment of adherence, and lead to issues or challenges with disclosure.

- Special attention to paediatric adherence is an essential component of HIV care.
- Adherence changes over time, especially as children grow and develop. It is critical to make time for ongoing adherence assessment and counselling at each clinic visit.

Strategies to promote paediatric adherence:

Provide Adherence Education

- Work with the parent and all caregivers to understand what is meant by adherence, including:
 - Understanding the diagnosis and the care and treatment plan
 - Coming to the clinic for appointments
 - Never missing a dose
 - Taking medicines the “right” way
 - Not taking any breaks
- Explain the importance of adherence to the child’s health.
 - With good adherence, children with HIV can live long, healthy and productive lives.
 - Acknowledge the difficulty in caring for children with HIV.
- Talk about the need for open, honest communication with the healthcare team.

Help Address the WHO, WHAT, WHEN and HOW of the medications

- **WHO** will give the medications? Every day? Mornings? Evenings? Weekdays? Weekends?
- **WHAT** medications will be given? Help caregivers become familiar with each medication.
- **WHEN** will the medications be given? Establish specific times and consider daily routines of caregivers and child (work, school, going to the market, etc.).
- **HOW** will the medications be given? Use of syringes, cutting and crushing tablets, with or without food, mixed with liquid, sequence.
 - Include demonstration and practise for caregivers.
 - Discuss a reward system to use when the child takes her or his medicines the right way.

See Appendix 7-M for practical tips on giving medication to children.



Trainer Instructions

Slides 40-41

- Step 4:** Lead participants through Exercise 2, which will provide an opportunity to recognise and articulate the values that they hold around child HIV and disclosure.

Exercise 2: Clarification of values — HIV disclosure to children Game	
Purpose	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Encourage participants to recognise and articulate the values they hold around child HIV and disclosure
Duration	40 minutes
Advance Preparation	Post large "Strongly Agree" and "Strongly Disagree" signs on opposite sides of the room.
Introduction	As healthcare workers, participants may often hold feelings, opinions and beliefs that may influence the way they approach their work. This exercise provides an opportunity to identify these personal beliefs and discuss how they affect their work.
Activities	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Tell participants to read through the six statements in their Participant Manuals, which are also listed in the box below, and take four to five minutes to rank on a scale of 1–3 the degree to which they agree or disagree with each statement. 2. Ask all participants to stand up and stand in between the two signs. 3. Read the first statement, ask participants to stand under the “Strongly Agree(1)” sign if they very strongly agree with the statement or stand under the “Strongly Disagree(3)” sign if they very strongly disagree. Those with feelings in between (2) should position themselves somewhere between the signs. 4. Ask participants at each end of the room to state why they feel that way about the statement, for example: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ <i>Why did you disagree with the statement “communicating with children is difficult”?</i> ▪ <i>Why did you agree with the statement “communicating with children is difficult”?</i> ▪ <i>Why are you neither agreeing nor disagreeing with this statement?</i> 5. After asking two to four people to discuss their point of view (more if the topic seems to warrant additional discussion), ask participants if anyone has changed their opinion on the statement and would like to change where they are standing. 6. Ask those who moved if they would like to explain why. 7. Read the next statements, repeating the above steps.
Debriefing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Tell participants: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ <i>There are no right or wrong answers to these statements. All of them depend on individual circumstances and personal opinion. The point of this exercise is that we all hold values and opinions about communicating with children about HIV. There can be differing opinions between members of the healthcare team as well as within members of a family.</i>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ <i>As professionals it is important that we are aware of our own opinions about cultural, traditional, religious and gender norms. Do not impose your own opinions and beliefs on the children/families with whom you are working — your beliefs may not be the same as your clients.</i> ■ Point out that healthcare workers need to acquire skills and techniques in communicating with children in order to help and empower caregivers to talk with their children about their health and concerns.
--	--

Statement	Strongly Disagree	Neither Disagree nor Agree	Strongly Agree
1. Communicating with children is difficult.	1	2	3
2. A child must know their HIV status by the age of eight years.	1	2	3
3. A caregiver is the best person to tell a child about their HIV status.	1	2	3
4. The best place to tell a child about her or his HIV status is at home.	1	2	3
5. A child does not need to know how they got HIV.	1	2	3
6. Healthcare workers should encourage caregivers to disclose to the child soon after learning the child's HIV status.	1	2	3



Trainer Instructions

Slides 42-44

Step 5:

Ask participants:

- *Do the children with HIV that you know realize that they are infected with HIV?*
- *If so, when did they find out? How did they find out? How was the disclosure experience for the child?*
- *If not, what do they know about their health status? What is the plan for telling the child her or his HIV status?*

Fill in, as needed, using the information below.



Make These Points

- Ideally a caregiver should disclose HIV test results to the child. Most caregivers will need support from healthcare workers to do this and to anticipate how to handle the child's reaction and questions.

Paediatric Disclosure

Disclosure is an ongoing process between the child and caregiver; the role of the healthcare worker is to assist and support the caregiver in this process. Discussions about a child's general health may begin at an early age, for example talking about going to the clinic and taking medicines to feel better. When to inform a child about her or his HIV status will depend on if the caregiver feels it is appropriate, the child's developmental level and cultural factors. **If possible, disclosure should not occur in the context of a crisis.**

Many caregivers may want to keep the diagnosis of HIV from the child; it is therefore often necessary to counsel the caregivers first, to help them understand the importance of starting the process of disclosure so that the child can participate in her or his own care and, eventually, know her or his status. Carrying out discussions with children in the presence of parents or guardians ensures that the messages the children receive from healthcare workers and caregivers are consistent. Take the caregivers' viewpoints into account, even when they do not necessarily match those of the healthcare worker or child.

Ideally, caregivers should be the ones to disclose HIV results to their children. Caregivers need practical support to understand how to explain the results to their child.

Strategies to Assist Families with Disclosure

Prepare families:

If the caregiver is not ready to disclose, the process cannot be forced. Because disclosure is an ongoing process, the healthcare worker should remind the caregiver that she or he is available to discuss or assist with communication about disclosure between the caregiver and child. Asking and discussing the questions below, can help determine what kind of support the caregiver needs.

- *What do you think is important to communicate to the child?*
- *What do you think will be the hardest part of the disclosure process?*
- *What do you think will be the hardest questions to answer?*

Educate families:

- Acknowledge that disclosure can be very difficult.
- Affirm the person's commitment to disclosing to the child.
- Answer any questions about paediatric HIV the family may have.
- Help families anticipate questions from and responses to the child.
- Remind the family that the child's need for information will change as the child develops, and that initially talking with the child about simple topics, such as their health status and the need for medications to keep well, may be enough.
- Plan how the child will receive support when they learn more about their HIV status.



Trainer Instructions

Slides 45-48

Step 6: Ask participants: *What are the psychosocial support and other needs of children and families living with HIV that would be provided in the community or in the home?*

Record responses on flip chart. (Possible responses could include: help with disclosure, support groups, follow-up after missed appointments, home-based care, help to take/give medications, linkages to income generating activities, nutritional and food support and legal advice, among others).

Next, ask participants to review this list and select the three most common/most urgent needs of the families they see at the clinic. Star these on the flip chart.

Step 7: Ask participants:

- *What are some of the ways we can improve linkages between this facility and the communities it serves?*
- *Are there currently formal linkages between community and facility-based services? Are there referral forms?*

Record responses on a flip chart and encourage participants to think about improving linkages to better meet the three most common/urgent needs of families identified above.



Make These Points

- A key component of paediatric HIV services is strong linkages among health facilities and the community.
- In order to provide a continuum of care and support to children, mothers, caregivers and other family members, barriers to paediatric care and treatment, including adherence and disclosure must be addressed in the community and at home.

Community Linkages

Healthcare facilities cannot meet all of the complex needs of families living with HIV. To offer truly comprehensive care, health facilities must partner with non-governmental and community-based organisations, home-based care workers, and other agencies that provide treatment, care and support services for mothers, children living with HIV and their families.

Linkages to community-based organisations can provide the resources, such as support groups, housing, transportation, food and legal assistance, to help families cope with the isolation, social stigma, financial and emotional pressures that often accompany a diagnosis of HIV. Linkages are key to addressing barriers to paediatric care and treatment on the community level. Non-governmental organisations, including community-based organisations, can address psychosocial needs and may be useful resources for supporting adherence, tracking patients lost to follow-up and providing home-based care and adherence support.

Healthcare workers should be familiar with the range of community-based services available and make referrals as appropriate. HIV service organisations in the community may provide social support through peer group counselling, clubs or referrals to other services.

Providing or referring for supportive services

Regular assessment, monitoring and support for mental health and psychosocial needs are critical at all stages of HIV infection. Often this requires a discussion or review of the barriers that inhibit care and treatment, such as appointment attendance, adherence and/or self-care. Based on patient assessment, the following services may be offered directly or by referral to improve care and address barriers:

- Support to help the mother or other family members come to terms with their diagnoses
- Psychosocial support for families with an HIV-exposed child while waiting for a diagnosis
- Psychosocial support for families when a child or other family member is diagnosed with HIV
- Referrals to faith-based organisations and other spiritual support
- Peer or group counselling and support from health agencies or other community-based agencies, such as support groups and PLWHA associations
- Adherence support for adults and children on ART
- Linkages to food and nutrition support
- Support and counselling to assist families with disclosure issues
- Home-based care for practical, emotional, psychosocial, adherence, infant feeding support and palliative care
- Linkages to income-generating activities and micro-credit, as well as legal assistance and non-formal trainings/schooling



Trainer Instructions

Slides 49-53

Step 8: Allow five minutes for questions and answers on this session.

Step 9: Summarise this module by reviewing the key points in the slides and box below.



Module 7: Key Points

- Making informed and timely referrals for HIV care and treatment is a critical part of post-test counselling and follow-up for children, caregivers and their families.
- The goals of caring for children living with HIV are to promote health and prevent disease progression.
- The goals of caring for HIV-exposed children include early identification of HIV infection, preventing opportunistic infections and maximising family health and well-being.
- History taking, physical examination, staging and laboratory evaluation are critical components in planning the appropriate care for children living with HIV.
- When children or adults meet clinical criteria to start ART, healthcare workers should ensure that they are provided with medications or given referrals, as needed.
- Healthcare workers involved in paediatric PITC may not be engaged in long-term counselling relationships with families, however, they should have some of the basic skills to better interact and provide guidance for their patients, particularly around adherence support and disclosure counselling.
- Appropriate care and support to children, caregivers and other family members requires addressing barriers to paediatric care and treatment, including adherence, in both the community and at home.
- Healthcare workers who are providing paediatric HIV testing and counselling services can help families access care through careful explanation of the next steps, making referrals and planning for follow-up.
- A key component of paediatric HIV services is strong linkages among health facilities and the community. Healthcare workers should be familiar with the range of community-based services available and make referrals as appropriate.

Appendix 7-A Paediatric Referral Form

PEDIATRIC REFERRAL FORM

Date / /
Day Month Year

Patient ID - - - -
Facility-based patient number (if different)

Name Surname Forename(s) Clinic code -

REFERRAL	Referred to: _____ (place)	If referral to UTH:
Referred from (clinic name): _____	Contact person: _____	<input type="checkbox"/> < 18 months+ signs of HIV
Referred by:	Reason for referral:	<input type="checkbox"/> CD4 < 5%
Name: _____	<input type="checkbox"/> Routine transfer	<input type="checkbox"/> Stevens Johnson Syndr.
Title: _____	<input type="checkbox"/> Complicated care	<input type="checkbox"/> severely malnourished
Phone number: _____	<input type="checkbox"/> Discharge from facility	<input type="checkbox"/> other: _____
	<input type="checkbox"/> Other: _____	

Clinical exam: Weight: _____ Temp: _____ PR: _____ RR: _____ Abnormal findings: _____ _____ CXR: Date ____/____/____ Findings: _____ CXR with patient: <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th></th> <th>Date</th> <th>Results</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>CD4 (baseline)</td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>CD4 % (baseline)</td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>CD4 % (latest)</td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Ast / ALT</td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Hb</td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Pregnancy Test</td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Creatinine (Kidney)</td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Sputum</td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Other</td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Other</td><td></td><td></td></tr> </tbody> </table>		Date	Results	CD4 (baseline)			CD4 % (baseline)			CD4 % (latest)			Ast / ALT			Hb			Pregnancy Test			Creatinine (Kidney)			Sputum			Other			Other		
	Date	Results																																
CD4 (baseline)																																		
CD4 % (baseline)																																		
CD4 % (latest)																																		
Ast / ALT																																		
Hb																																		
Pregnancy Test																																		
Creatinine (Kidney)																																		
Sputum																																		
Other																																		
Other																																		

MEDICAL HISTORY *Review important past medical history*

ARV STATUS Is patient currently on ARVs? Yes No

If yes, start date of ARV therapy / /
Day Month Year

Medications:
 Please list all drugs patient is currently taking (including prev. ARVs)

Name	Dose	Frequency	Date started

Do you believe this is ARV related? Yes No Unsure

Patient should return in:

1 wk 1 mo 3 mos Other

2 wks 2 mos 6 mos

Date of next visit:

/ /
Day Month Year

TB STATUS

No TB


Being evaluated

TB, not on therapy

On therapy (+RIF)

On therapy (-RIF)

Appendix 7-B Paediatric Clinical Follow Up



PAEDIATRIC CLINICAL FOLLOW UP

Date / /
Day Month Year

Patient ID - -
District Facility Serial no.

Facility ID (if different)

Patient Last Name

Patient First Name

Clinic code -

PRESENTING COMPLAINT

<input type="checkbox"/> Routine visit	<input type="checkbox"/> Cough < 2 weeks
<input type="checkbox"/> No complaint	<input type="checkbox"/> Cough > 2 weeks
<input type="checkbox"/> Weight loss	<input type="checkbox"/> Shortness of breath
<input type="checkbox"/> Fever	<input type="checkbox"/> Acute diarrhoea
<input type="checkbox"/> Lethargic	<input type="checkbox"/> Chronic diarrhoea
<input type="checkbox"/> Swelling of feet	<input type="checkbox"/> Difficulty drinking
<input type="checkbox"/> Rash	<input type="checkbox"/> Sores in mouth
<input type="checkbox"/> Convulsions	<input type="checkbox"/> Swellings/lymph nodes
<input type="checkbox"/> Vomiting	<input type="checkbox"/> Eye/ear pain/discharge

Tick at left if patient mentions any complaints listed. Note duration, recurrence below.

Age years months
 Same guardian as last visit Yes No
 Child knows his/her status Yes No
 Is patient on ART? Yes No
 If on ART, how long? _____
 Is patient pregnant? Yes No
 Estimated date of delivery:
 / /
Day Month Year

CURRENT MEDICATIONS

NRTIs <input type="checkbox"/> Zidovudine (AZT) <input type="checkbox"/> Stavudine (D4T) <input type="checkbox"/> Lamivudine (3TC) <input type="checkbox"/> Abacavir (ABC) <input type="checkbox"/> Tenofovir (TDF) <input type="checkbox"/> Didanosine (ddI) <input type="checkbox"/> Emtricitabine (FTC)	NNRTIs <input type="checkbox"/> Nevirapine (NVP) <input type="checkbox"/> Efavirenz (EFV) PIs <input type="checkbox"/> Lopinavir/ritonavir (LPV/r) <input type="checkbox"/> Indinavir (IDV) <input type="checkbox"/> Nelfinavir (NFV)	Non-ARVs <input type="checkbox"/> Septrin <input type="checkbox"/> Fluconazole <input type="checkbox"/> Anti-malarials <input type="checkbox"/> TB medication <input type="checkbox"/> Traditional medicines and herbs <input type="checkbox"/> Other _____ <input type="checkbox"/> Other _____ <input type="checkbox"/> Other _____
--	---	--

Please review under-five card for immunisations Yes No *If No, order as needed in Plan*

Follow up test: DNA PCR RNA PCR ELISA/Rapid test Other _____
 Result Positive Negative Not available

Place: / /
Day Month Year

REVIEW OF SYSTEMS

Within the past month, has the patient experienced any of the following symptoms:

CONSTITUTIONAL Irritability <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No Inconsolable crying <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No Fatigue (tired) <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No * Fever <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No * Night sweats <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No Appetite loss <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No * Weight loss <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No	CARDIO-RESPIRATORY * Productive cough <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No * Non-productive cough <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No * Haemoptysis <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No * Difficulty breathing/SOB <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No Dizziness <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No Palpitations <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No Swelling of legs <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No	Memory problems <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No Visual problems <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No Confusion <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No Numbness/pain/burning in legs/feet <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No Weakness in limbs <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No Seizures <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No
GASTROINTESTINAL Diarrhoea <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No Nausea and/or vomiting <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No Oral lesions <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No Pain/difficulty swallowing <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No Abdominal pain <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No	NEUROLOGICAL Delayed milestones <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No Encephalopathy <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No Changes in developmental milestones <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No Headache <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No	GENITAL-URINARY Dysuria <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No Haematuria <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No
		OTHER Napkin dermatitis <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No Rash <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No Joint pain/swelling <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No

Last recorded weight: _____

Date weight taken (mo/yr): _____

* If symptom present, screen for TB using TB Diagnostic Worksheet (where in use)

If yes, describe:

Clerk initial _____

Staff ID _____

Staff signature _____

Associated Printers Ltd

PHYSICAL EXAM		Height (cm) <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/>	Weight (kg) <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/>	SD <input type="radio"/> >M <input type="radio"/> 1 <input type="radio"/> 2 <input type="radio"/> 3 <input type="radio"/> 4
Head circum (cm) <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/>	BP <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> / <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/>	Temp <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/>	Heart rate <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/>	Resp rate <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/>
Normal Abnormal		Describe any abnormal findings below		General: <input type="checkbox"/> Pallor <input type="checkbox"/> Jaundice <input type="checkbox"/> Edema
Skin	<input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/>			
Eyes	<input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/>			
Ears, nose	<input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/>			
Oral	<input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/>			
Lymph nodes	<input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/>			
Heart	<input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/>			
Lungs	<input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/>			
Abdomen	<input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/>			
Urogenital	<input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/>			
Musculoskeletal	<input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/>			
Neurological	<input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/>			
Tanner staging <input type="radio"/> 1 <input type="radio"/> 2 <input type="radio"/> 3 <input type="radio"/> 4 <input type="radio"/> 5				

DEVELOPMENTAL ASSESSMENT				Appropriate for age? <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No
3 MONTHS	9 MONTHS	24 MONTHS	48 MONTHS	
<input type="radio"/> Holds head	<input type="radio"/> Stands supported	<input type="radio"/> Washes hands	<input type="radio"/> Hops on one foot	
<input type="radio"/> Smiles	12 MONTHS	<input type="radio"/> Jumps up	<input type="radio"/> Dresses alone	
<input type="radio"/> Starting to roll from front to back	<input type="radio"/> Pulls to stand	<input type="radio"/> Combines words	<input type="radio"/> Can draw a stick man	
	<input type="radio"/> Says mama	<input type="radio"/> Plays with others	60 MONTHS	
6 MONTHS		36 MONTHS	<input type="radio"/> Heel-to-toe walks	
<input type="radio"/> Sits unsupported		<input type="radio"/> Can put on shirt	<input type="radio"/> Counts to 10	
<input type="radio"/> Babbles		<input type="radio"/> Speech understandable	<input type="radio"/> Knows colours	
		<input type="radio"/> Balances on one foot		

WHO STAGING		
STAGE 1	STAGE 3	STAGE 4
<input type="checkbox"/> Asymptomatic HIV infection	<input type="checkbox"/> Mod. malnutrition (wt loss -2SD / failure to gain weight on R)	<input type="checkbox"/> Severe wasting/malnutrition (wt loss -3 SD +/- oedema)
<input type="checkbox"/> Persistent gen. lymphadenopathy	<input type="checkbox"/> Diarrhoea (> 14 days)	<input type="checkbox"/> Pneumocystis pneumonia
STAGE 2	<input type="checkbox"/> Fever (> 1 mo, > 37.5 degrees, intermittent or constant)	<input type="checkbox"/> Severe recurrent bact inf (excl pneu)
<input type="checkbox"/> Hepatosplenomegaly	<input type="checkbox"/> Persistent oral candida, > 6 wks age	<input type="checkbox"/> Chronic HSV (> 1 mo) at any site
<input type="checkbox"/> Papular pruritic eruptions (PPE)	<input type="checkbox"/> Oral hairy leukoplakia	<input type="checkbox"/> EPTB
<input type="checkbox"/> Extensive wart infections	<input type="checkbox"/> Necrotizing gingivitis	<input type="checkbox"/> Kaposi's sarcoma
<input type="checkbox"/> Extensive molluscum	<input type="checkbox"/> Lymph node TB	<input type="checkbox"/> Candida (oesophageal, trachea, bronchus or lungs)
<input type="checkbox"/> Recurrent oral ulcers	<input type="checkbox"/> Pulmonary TB	<input type="checkbox"/> CNS toxoplasmosis (excl neonates)
<input type="checkbox"/> Parotid enlargement	<input type="checkbox"/> Severe recurrent bact pneumonia	<input type="checkbox"/> HIV encephalopathy
<input type="checkbox"/> Gingival erythema	<input type="checkbox"/> LIP (symptomatic)	<input type="checkbox"/> Cryptococcosis
<input type="checkbox"/> Herpes zoster	<input type="checkbox"/> HIV-associated chronic lung disease	<input type="checkbox"/> Disseminated mycoses (histo, coccid, penicill, cryptosporid)
<input type="checkbox"/> Recurrent/chronic URTIs	<input type="checkbox"/> Anaemia (< 8 g/dl)	<input type="checkbox"/> Chronic isosporiasis
<input type="checkbox"/> Fungal nail infections	<input type="checkbox"/> Neutropenia (< 0.5 x 10 ⁹ /l)	<input type="checkbox"/> Non-TB mycobacteria
	<input type="checkbox"/> Thrombocytopenia < 50	<input type="checkbox"/> NHL (cerebral or B cell)
		<input type="checkbox"/> PML
		<input type="checkbox"/> HIV-assoc. cardiomyopathy/nephropathy
WHO Stage today <input type="radio"/> 1 <input type="radio"/> 2 <input type="radio"/> 3 <input type="radio"/> 4		
Functional status: <input type="radio"/> Healthy, able to go to school <input type="radio"/> Sick, able to go to school <input type="radio"/> Sick, unable to go to school <input type="radio"/> Bedridden		

PAGE 2 OF 3	PAEDIATRIC FOLLOW UP v3.2.4	Clerk initial _____	Staff ID _____	Staff signature _____
-------------	-----------------------------	---------------------	----------------	-----------------------

ASSESSMENT Opportunistic infections should be ticked above under WHO Staging.

New clinical findings Yes No _____

Any acute illnesses? Yes No _____

Does the child need any blood tests today? Yes No *If yes, complete below*

Counseling needs assessment of child:

The child is aware that he/she is sick with a chronic disease

The child is aware of the name of the disease

The child can swallow pills/tablets/capsules

An immediate family member has recently died of HIV/AIDS at home

The child has recently had a disruption of routine life (school, play, friends)

Does the child require any counselling today? Yes No

If yes: Disclosure counselling Adherence counselling Bereavement counselling Other _____

Does the child require any other referrals? Yes No *If yes, indicate below*

PLAN Use the ARV Eligibility form to initiate / continue / modify treatment.

Assess for ART Eligibility _____

Continue ART _____

Modify ART _____

Stop ART _____

Vaccinations due:

BCG _____

DPT/HBV/HIB _____

OPV _____

Measles _____

Other _____

<p>ARV PRESCRIPTION</p> <p>FIRST LINE. Specify dose and frequency.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> AZT _____ + 3TC _____ + NVP _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> AZT _____ + 3TC _____ + EFV _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> D4T _____ + 3TC _____ + NVP _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> D4T _____ + 3TC _____ + EFV _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> ABC _____ + 3TC _____ + NVP _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> ABC _____ + 3TC _____ + EFV _____</p> <p>SECOND LINE. Only in consultation with Medical Officer.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> AZT _____ + ddi _____ + LPV/r _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> D4T _____ + ABC _____ + LPV/r _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> ddi _____ + ABC _____ + LPV/r _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Other: _____ + _____ + _____ + _____</p>	<p>PRESCRIPTIONS Pregnant? <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Septrin prophylaxis _____ ml od <input type="radio"/> Start <input type="radio"/> Continue <input type="radio"/> Stop</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Septrin treatment _____ mg _____ X _____ days</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Fluconazole maint. _____ mg od <input type="radio"/> Start <input type="radio"/> Continue <input type="radio"/> Stop</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Fluconazole treat. _____ mg _____ X _____ days</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Other _____ : _____ mg _____ X _____ days</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Other _____ : _____ mg _____ X _____ days</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Fansidar _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Coartem _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Other _____</p> <p>TB DRUGS</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Multivit _____ <input type="radio"/> RHZ _____ tabs od x _____ mo</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Iron _____ <input type="radio"/> SRHZ _____ tabs od x _____ mo</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Folate _____ <input type="radio"/> RH _____ tabs od x _____ mo</p>
<p>INVESTIGATIONS</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> None <input type="checkbox"/> Hb/HCT <input type="checkbox"/> Pregnancy</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> HIV: PCR <input type="checkbox"/> Full blood count <input type="checkbox"/> RPR</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> HIV: ELISA/Rapid <input type="checkbox"/> ALT/AST <input type="checkbox"/> TLC</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> CD4 count <input type="checkbox"/> Creatinine <input type="checkbox"/> Amylase/lipase</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> CD4 percent <input type="checkbox"/> *Sputum AFB <input type="checkbox"/> Viral load</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Chest X-ray <input type="checkbox"/> Other _____</p>	<p>REFERRALS <input type="checkbox"/> None <input type="checkbox"/> Adherence counseling</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Family planning <input type="checkbox"/> Treatment preparation</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Nutritional support <input type="checkbox"/> Psychosocial support</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Inpatient care (this facility) <input type="checkbox"/> Community health worker</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Inpatient care: _____ <input type="checkbox"/> Consented to HBC</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> *TB treatment/DOT program <input type="checkbox"/> Other _____</p>

Do at next visit: _____ **If suspect TB, complete TB Diagnostic Worksheet (where in use)*

Next clinical appointment should be in: 1 wk 2 wks 3 wks 1 mo 3 mos 6 mos Other: _____

Date of next visit: / /

Appendix 7-C Paediatric Discontinuation Form

PEDIATRIC DISCONTINUATION FORM Date: / /
Day Month Year

Patient ID - - - Facility-based patient number (if different)

Name _____ Clinic code -
Surname Forename(s)

Date of program discontinuation: / /
Day Month Year

REASON FOR DISCONTINUATION

Patient is being made inactive. Reason:

- Transferred to another HIV treatment programme
- Patient tracking failed after 3 attempts
- Moved
- Poor adherence
- Patient / caregiver decided to discontinue HIV care and treatment. Specify reason: _____
- Other: _____

Patient has died

<p>REPORT OF DEATH</p> <p>Date of death: <input type="text"/> / <input type="text"/> / <input type="text"/> <small>Day Month Year</small></p> <p>CAUSE OF DEATH</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="radio"/> Tuberculosis <input type="radio"/> Meningitis <input type="radio"/> Malnutrition <input type="radio"/> Diarrhea/dehydration <input type="radio"/> Malaria <input type="radio"/> Pneumonia <input type="radio"/> Drug reaction <input type="radio"/> Accident <input type="radio"/> Unknown <input type="radio"/> Other: _____ 	<p>REPORT OF DEATH MADE BY:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="radio"/> Caregiver/ Family member arriving at clinic <input type="radio"/> Friend arriving at clinic <input type="radio"/> Healthcare staff <input type="radio"/> Community health worker/contact tracing <p>SOURCE OF INFORMATION FOR CAUSE OF DEATH:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="radio"/> Medical record <input type="radio"/> Death certificate <input type="radio"/> Verbal <p>PLACE OF DEATH:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="radio"/> Home <input type="radio"/> Hospital <input type="radio"/> Clinic in-patient <input type="radio"/> Other facility <input type="radio"/> Other: _____
<p>Additional comments regarding death: _____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p>	

Appendix 7-D: Sample Patient Tracking Log

How to Use this Tracking Log

Appointment and tracking systems are an important part of quality PITC services. The log can help clinic staff manage patient flow, plan for each day, and identify patients who have missed appointments so they can be followed up and brought back into care. **It is best if one person at the clinic is designated as responsible for tracking daily appointments and follow-up to make sure that no one is missed.**

Daily Activities

Making appointments:

- Before each patient leaves the clinic, they should schedule a follow-up appointment.
- Use the yearly calendar at the start of the appointment book to determine which day the person should return (for example, in six months for a CD4 test and follow-up, in one week for lab results, or in two weeks for a follow-up with the doctor). You can “X” national holidays in the yearly calendar, and on the daily calendar pages to avoid scheduling appointments on these days.
- Find the daily appointment sheet for the return date. Each day, Monday-Friday, has its own page (front and back).
- When you find the correct daily appointment sheet, and confirm that this date is convenient for the patient, write the *Patient’s Name*, *Patient Clinic Number* (and the *Phone Number* where the person can be reached).
- Using the codes given, write the *Reason for Visit*.
- Make sure to tell the patient when to return to the clinic and why they need to return.
- Give the patient instructions on what to do if they will not be able to come back to the clinic on this date (for example, if there is a phone, make sure they have the number so they can call and inform the clinic that they cannot come).

Keeping track of daily clinic attendance:

- Each morning, pull the patient files for all of the people with an appointment and put them in a convenient location.
- Each morning, draw a thick line on the daily appointment sheet under the last person with a scheduled appointment.
- When a patient arrives at the clinic, check to see if she or he is scheduled for an appointment that day.
 - If you see the name on the daily appointment sheet, tick Yes under the column that says *Attended?*
 - If you do not see their name, **DO NOT SEND THEM AWAY!** Record the name under the line on the daily appointment sheet and fill in their information as above. It is important to record each person that

comes to the clinic everyday, whether or not they have an appointment. Make sure the patient understands why it is important to have an appointment.

- Try to prioritize patients who have scheduled appointments to decrease their waiting time and reinforce the importance of appointments.
- At the end of each day, go through each entry above the line you drew on the daily appointment sheet. For each person that had a scheduled appointment for that day (above the line you drew), make sure *Yes* or *No* is ticked in the *Attend?* column.
- Then, in the *Total* row at the bottom of each day, add how many people attended the clinic for scheduled appointments and how many did not attend scheduled appointments.

Weekly Activities

- Every Monday morning, review the daily attendance of the previous week (five working days).
- Implement the standard clinic protocol for following-up with patients who miss appointments each week (this will depend on the site). Patients need to give specific consent to get an SMS, a phone call, or a home visit. This should be noted on their individual patient record.
- For each person that missed an appointment in the previous week, tick the appropriate *Action Taken*. This could be more than one action and could include sending an SMS, calling the person, conducting a home visit, or linking with a community health worker to conduct a home visit. Remember, this can only be done if the patient has given consent.
- Record the *Outcome* of follow-up activities. If the patient comes back to the clinic within two weeks of their missed appointment, tick *Came back*. If they do not return, tick *Did not come back*.
- Write any *Comments* about attempts to contact specific patients or the outcomes of these contacts. For example, record when a patient has died, moved away, transferred to another health facility, or other information. You can also record when you were unable to reach the person or have a wrong phone number on file.

Day of the week

Date

	PATIENT NAME <i>(list all patients scheduled for the day)</i>	Pt CLINIC No	PHONE # or other contact information	REASON FOR VISIT Pre-C = Pre-test counselling Post-C=Post test counselling AB= HIV-antibody test DBS=dried blood spot collection for DNA PCR LR= lab results O=Other (describe)	ATTEND ?		IF NO, ACTION TAKEN			OUTCOME		COMMENTS (patient died, moved, transferred, wrong phone # on file, etc.)
					YES	NO	SMS	Call	Home visit	Came back	Did not come back	
1												
2												
3												
4												
5												
6												
7												
8												
9												
10												
11												
12												
13												
14												
15												
16												
17												
18												

19												
20												
21												
22												
23												
24												
25												
26												
27												

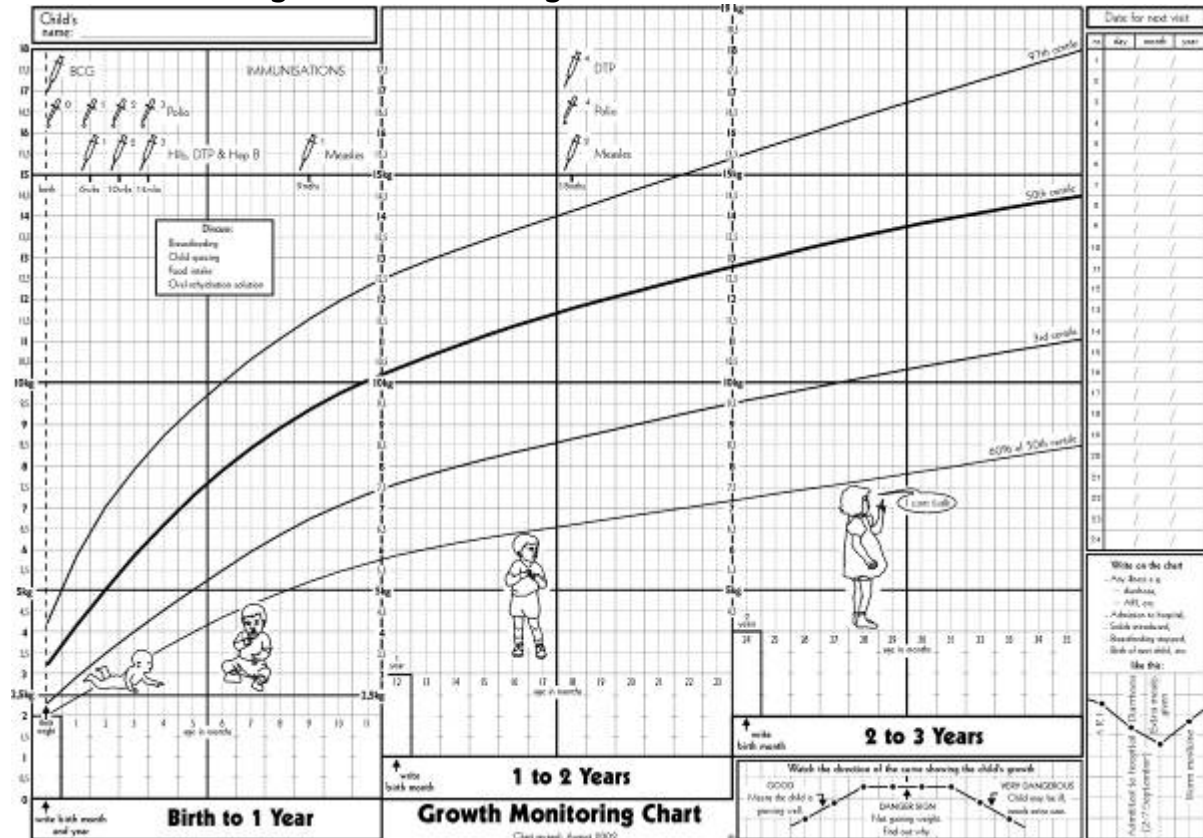
Appendix 7-E Growth Monitoring

Growth is a sensitive indicator of health and nutritional status. Plotting a child's measurements over time on growth charts will show whether a child is growing normally or not. When evaluating children's growth it is important to look at the trend of the growth line over a period of months and years.

The "Under-Five Card" includes a graph for plotting a child's weight at each visit, as shown in Figure 7.1. The graph includes information about normal growth, expressed as "percentiles".

- **Vertical axis:** This is the weight axis. It is represented in kilograms both on the left and right margin of each year, starting at 0 kg. The vertical axis is marked at 0,5 kg intervals (dotted lines) with the 1 kg intervals (solid lines) exactly 1 cm apart.
- **Horizontal-axis:** This is the age axis. The age scale has one space per month. In the first column (from the left) the birth month and year should be written and the child's weight plotted with a small dot.
- A centile represents an average weight of most children in the same age group.
- A weight at the 97th centile means that 97% of children at this age weigh less than this amount. A weight at the 3rd centile means that 97% of children at this age weight more than this amount.

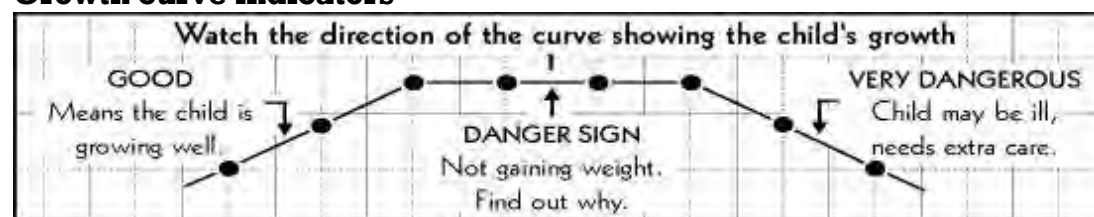
Under-Five Card growth monitoring chart



How to Plot Weight

- Obtain accurate weight
 - Children two years old and younger should ideally be weighed nude.
 - Children over two years old should be weighed with light clothing, without shoes.
 - If only an adult scale is available, the child and caregiver can be weighed together, then the caregiver's weight (separately measured) can be subtracted from the total weight of the child and caregiver.
 - Note: whichever type of scale is being used should be calibrated daily.
- Record the measurement on the health record, along with the date and the child's age (in months if under one year) and to the nearest $\frac{1}{4}$ year if between two years and five years.
- Plot the weight measurements on the growth chart. Find the child's age on the horizontal axis. Draw a vertical line up from that point. Find the weight on the vertical axis. Draw a horizontal line across from that point until it intersects the vertical line. Make a small dot where the two lines intersect.
- Compare the measurement with the measurements from previous visits to identify any major shifts in the child's growth pattern and the need for further assessment.
- Interpret the plotted measurements. A fall from the child's own upward curve or a downward trajectory from the baseline weight centile across major weight centile lines (for example, a child who falls from the 50th percentile to just above the 3rd percentile) indicates a problem.
- The growth curve of a normally growing child will usually follow a track that is roughly parallel (i.e., is basically the same shape) to the average curve (bolded curve, 50th percentile line) on the Under-Five card. The track may be above or below the median. A flat line indicates that the child is not growing. This is called stagnation and should be investigated. When weight "falters" or the growth curve "flattens" and is no longer parallel to the percentile line, there is a need for further assessment and intervention. Below, Figure 7.2 illustrates growth curve indicators and Figure 7.4 shows four weight curves: the first is adequate, and the remaining three illustrate growth faltering.

Growth curve indicators



Measuring head circumference

Measure head circumference at every visit until 24 months of age. Head circumference is the last measurement to be affected in a malnourished infant. This measure reflects brain size and is used to screen for potential developmental and health problems — including encephalopathy. Refer for assessment of health or developmental risk if head circumference measurements suggest growth faltering or if a child measures above the 3 line or below the -3.

Procedure

- Use a paper measuring tape to avoid stretching as can happen with cloth tape.
- Remove any braids, barrettes or other hair decorations that will interfere with the measurement.
- Have the child to sit comfortably in the arms or lap of a caregiver.
- Position the tape just above the eyebrows, above the ears, and around the biggest part of the back of the head, as in Figure 7.3. The goal is to locate the maximum circumference of the head.
- Pull tape snugly to compress the hair and underlying soft tissues.
- Read measurement to the nearest 0.1 cm and record.
- Reposition tape and re-measure head circumference. If measurements do not agree within 0.2 cm, then reposition tape and re-measure a third time. Record the average of the two measures in closest agreement.

Measuring head circumference²

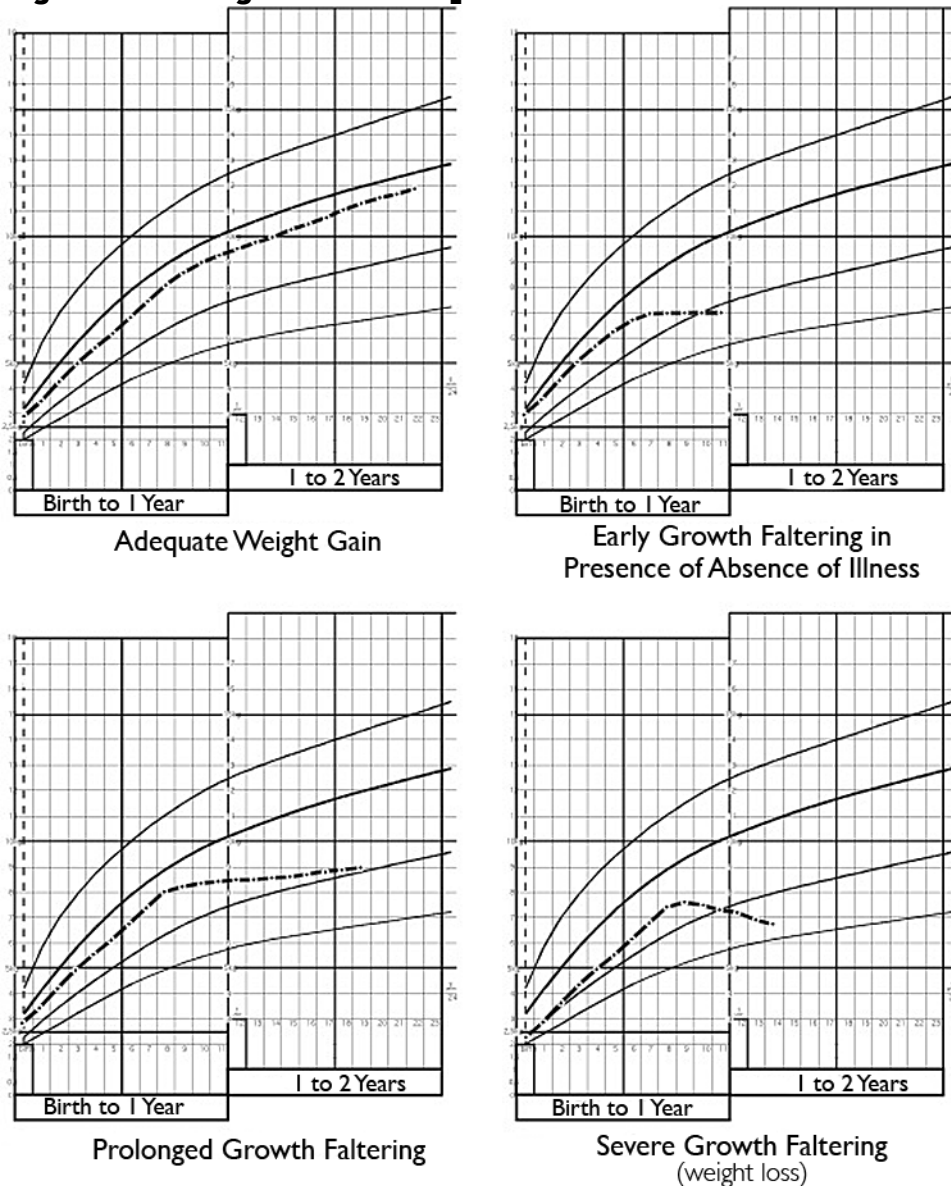


How is Growth Failure Defined?

Growth failure may be the first sign that an HIV-exposed child is infected or that an infected child requires ART. If the child is already receiving ART, growth failure may be a sign of poor treatment adherence or of treatment failure; in such cases, the child's treatment regimen should be reassessed. Growth failure is defined as:

- Weight less than the 3rd percentile for more than two months; or
- A downward crossing of two major weight percentile lines (e.g., a patient who falls from the 25th percentile to below the 3rd percentile); or
- Failure to follow along his or her own curve.

Figure 7.1: Diagrams of Adequate Growth and Growth Faltering



Role of the Healthcare Worker

- Weigh and measure child; plot results on a national growth curve and/or WHO Growth Curves.
- Measure head circumference for children two years and under.
- Provide health education on the importance of growth monitoring and good nutrition.
- Ask mother about her child's eating habits and potential constraints in providing food.
- Counsel and educate mother about the child's nutritional needs.
- If child is stunted or wasted, explore with the mother possible causes of growth failure:
 - *What did your child eat/drink today?*

- *How about yesterday?*
- *Do you normally have enough food to prepare regular meals for your family?*
- Discuss nutrition management or refer appropriately.
- Educate mother on hygienic food preparation and the need for safe water.
- Discuss the child's developmental needs: see table in Appendix 7-F for specific milestones. If a problem is suspected, refer for developmental testing according to national policy and availability.

Role of the Caregivers

- With HCW at each visit, review the child's growth.
- Discuss your child's nutritional habits and needs: what your child eats — how much and how often.
- Breastfeed or prepare nutritious foods and replacement feeds as recommended.
- Alert HCW of any concerns about the growth or development of a child.

Adapted from:

WHO. (2006). Child Growth Standards. Available at:
<http://www.who.int/hiv/pub/guidelines/en/>

National Center for Education in Maternal and Child Health. Bright Futures, Guidelines for Health Supervision of Children, Children, and Adolescents (2nd ed. rev.) Pocket Guide. (2001). Available at: <http://www.brightfutures.org/pocket/index.html>

Appendix 7-F Developmental Assessment

Impact of HIV on Child Development

- Delayed acquisition of normal developmental milestones or loss of previously acquired skills may be the first sign of HIV in a child whose HIV status is unknown.
- Children living with HIV who are not receiving ART (or children with HIV treatment failure) often experience developmental and neurological disabilities and may be slow to reach expected milestones in motor skills and mental development such as crawling, walking and speaking.
- Prompt treatment with ART may halt progression of neurological damage, improve symptoms and avoid permanent disability. Therefore, it is critical to respond to suspected or confirmed developmental problems.

HIV and suspected or confirmed developmental delay

- If the child's HIV status is unknown: Recommend immediate HIV-testing and counselling.
- If the child is living with HIV but not yet on ART: Conduct immediate re-evaluation of treatment eligibility.
- If the child is HIV-infected and on ART: Conduct immediate evaluation for treatment failure (including assessment of adherence).

Developmental Surveillance

Developmental surveillance is a continuous process where professionals conduct skilled observations of children during their healthcare visits. It includes eliciting and attending to parental concerns, obtaining a relevant developmental history and making accurate and informative observations of children. The aims of developmental surveillance and screening are to identify children at risk of developmental delays or disabilities and to provide them with further evaluation and appropriate interventions.

Early identification of children with developmental delays or disabilities can lead to treatment and/or interventions that lessen its impact on the functioning of the child and family. Children who are identified with developmental challenges and receive intervention early have a greater chance of improving their capabilities.

Monitoring child development should be part of routine care and treatment, especially in the context of HIV because neurological symptoms can occur prior to significant immune suppression. Neurodevelopmental delays or regressions can be a sign of HIV infection, progression and/or treatment failure. In particular, the presence of HIV in the central nervous system can result in HIV encephalopathy, a disease process characterised

by impaired cognitive and motor function paresis or pathological reflexes and failure to attain age appropriate milestones (or the loss of those previously attained).

Improving skills in observing the development of patients and tracking their progress at routine visits is an integral part of quality paediatric healthcare. The table below summarises normal developmental milestones.

Developmental milestones		
	Milestones	Red flags
3 months	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Turns head toward sound ▪ Smiles ▪ Raises head when on stomach ▪ Brings hand to mouth ▪ Watches faces intently ▪ Recognises familiar people ▪ Follows moving objects with eyes ▪ Vocalises 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Does not seem to respond to loud noises ▪ Floppy or excessively stiff ▪ Poor sucking or swallowing ▪ No visual fixation or following ▪ Asymmetry of tone or movement ▪ Excessive head lag ▪ Does not smile
6 months	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Sits unsupported or with minimal support ▪ Babbles ▪ Turns to caregiver's voice ▪ Reaches for familiar persons ▪ Reaches for objects ▪ Shows likes and dislikes ▪ Plays with feet when prone ▪ Rolls over 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Floppiness or excessive stiffness ▪ Failure to use both hands ▪ No response to sound ▪ Squinting or inability to move both eyes ▪ Does not roll over
9 months	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Sits without support ▪ Rolls over ▪ Babbles and imitates sounds ▪ Understands a few words, e.g. "bye-bye" or "no" ▪ Able to drink from a cup and hold a bottle ▪ Points at objects or people ▪ Pulls to stand 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Floppiness or excessive stiffness ▪ Unable to sit ▪ No response to sound ▪ Squinting or inability to move both eyes, follow object or face ▪ Persistence of primitive reflexes
12 months	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ May walk alone or "creep" around furniture ▪ Imitates actions ▪ Looks for toys or objects that are out of sight ▪ Responds to own name ▪ Understands simple 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Unable to bear weight on legs ▪ No single words ▪ Does not point to objects ▪ Does not use gestures, such as waving or shaking head

	<p>commands, e.g. “Close the door”</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Feeds self finger foods 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ No response to sound ▪ Unable to grasp objects
18 months	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Runs ▪ Scribbles ▪ Throws a ball ▪ Climbs onto chair ▪ Obvious hand preference ▪ Can say 6-20 words ▪ Spoon feeds ▪ Imitates actions ▪ Walks backward 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Failure to walk ▪ Unable to understand simple commands ▪ Cannot say any words ▪ Unable to grasp small objects
2 years	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Combines words ▪ Asks for food, drink, and toilet ▪ Handles spoon well; spoon feeds without mess ▪ Pretend play ▪ Looks at pictures 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Does not develop mature heel-toe walking pattern after several months of walking, or walks only on toes ▪ Does not use a 2-word sentence ▪ Does not understand simple instruction ▪ Poor coordination
3 years	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Climbs ▪ Goes up and down stairs ▪ Knows name and sex ▪ Balances on one foot ▪ Puts on a shirt ▪ Speech is understandable 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Unstable walk ▪ Few words, no sentences ▪ No involvement in “pretend” play ▪ No interest in other children
4 years	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Hops ▪ Knows full name and age ▪ Recognises colours ▪ Dresses and undresses ▪ Make-believe play 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Speech difficult to understand because of poor articulation, omission, or substitutions of consonants ▪ No interest in interactive games ▪ No interest in other children ▪ Does not use sentences
<p>*Note that a loss of skills from one visit to the next is always cause for concern.</p>		

Appendix 7-G Zambia EPI Schedule

Zambia Immunisation Recommendations for Children Living with HIV¹

Age of Child	Vaccine
Birth ²	OPV-0
6 weeks	DPT-1 ³ , OPV-1 ⁴ , Hib-1 ⁵ , PCV-1 ⁶ , HepB-1 ⁷
10 weeks	DPT-2, OPV-2, Hib-2, PCV-2, HepB-2
14 weeks	DPT-3, OPV-3, Hib-3, PCV-3, HepB-3
6 months	Measles ⁸ or MMR
9 months	Measles or MMR
Key:	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ BCG = bacille Calmette-Guérin ■ OPV = oral polio ■ DPT = diphtheria, pertussis, tetanus 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Hib = haemophilus influenzae type b ■ PCV = pneumococcal conjugate ■ HepB = Hepatitis B
<p>¹ Additional immunisations may be included in national recommendations that account for local disease prevalence.</p> <p>² BCG. WHO recommends (2007) that children who are known to be HIV-infected, even if asymptomatic, should not be immunised with BCG vaccine. Recent evidence shows that children who were HIV-infected when vaccinated with BCG at birth and who later developed AIDS, were at increased risk of developing disseminated BCG disease. Among these children, the benefits of potentially preventing severe TB are outweighed by the risks associated with the use of BCG vaccine. However, because of the difficulties in identifying children infected with HIV at birth, BCG vaccination may need to be given at birth to all children regardless of HIV exposure, in areas with high endemicity of tuberculosis and populations with high HIV prevalence.</p> <p>³ DTP. Children who have either recurrent convulsions or active central nervous system disease or who have had shock or convulsions within 3 days of receiving a DPT vaccination should not receive subsequent DPT vaccinations. For those children, substitute the DT (diphtheria–tetanus) formulation. All subsequent DT immunisations may be given.</p> <p>⁴ OPV. If the child has diarrhoea and is scheduled to receive OPV, the dose should be given as scheduled. However, the dose should not be counted in the schedule, and an additional dose of OPV should be given after the diarrhoea has resolved.</p> <p>⁵ Hib. The first dose of <i>Haemophilus influenzae</i> type b vaccine can be given at six weeks of age or older. Give three doses at 4-8 week intervals. Some countries recommend a booster dose at 12-18 months of age. Hib should be delayed if the child is severely immunocompromised.</p>	

- ⁶ **PCV.** The first dose of PCV can be given at 6 weeks of age or older, and then at intervals of at least 4 weeks. The vaccine may be administered along with other vaccines provided that a separate syringe and injection site are used.
- ⁷ **HepB.** There are multiple Hepatitis B vaccinations schedules depending on local epidemiology. Provide 3 doses of the vaccine at least four weeks apart (minimum four week intervals). Doses may be given as noted above or first dose can be given at birth, followed by a second and third dose at the time of the first and third diphtheria–tetanus–pertussis (DTP) vaccination. Alternatively, a four-dose schedule may be used where the dose at birth is followed by three additional doses, following the schedules commonly used for DTP or Hib.
- ⁸ **MMR.** Because of the increased risk of early and severe measles infection, HIV-exposed children who are not severely immunocompromised should receive a dose of standard measles vaccine (or where measles-mumps-rubella (MMR) combined vaccine is given, combined MMR vaccine is recommended whenever one or more of the individual components are indicated) at 6 months of age with a second dose as soon after the age of 9 months as possible. Children who are severely immunosuppressed (based on age-specific CD4 lymphocyte) due to HIV infection should not receive measles vaccine until immunological improvement is observed.

All children who have been exposed to HIV should be fully immunised according to age. Because most children who are HIV-infected do not have severe immune suppression during the first year of life, immunisation should occur as early as possible after the recommended age to optimise the immune response.

BCG and live attenuated vaccines (including influenza, Japanese encephalitis, measles, mumps, rubella, typhoid, varicella and yellow fever) should not be given to children with signs or symptoms of HIV infection.

Appendix 7-H Cotrimoxazole Dosing in Infants and Children

Cotrimoxazole Prophylaxis for Children Dosing Recommendations		
Trimethoprim/Sulfamethoxazole, CTX/SMZ, Cotrimoxazole, Septrim®, Bactrim®		
Age	Suspension 40 mg TMP/200 mg SMZ per 5 ml	Single-Strength Tablet 80 mg TMP/400 mg SMZ
< 6 months	2.5 ml daily	1/4 tablet daily
6 months–5 years	5 ml daily	1/2 tablet daily
6 years–14 years	10 ml daily	1 tablet daily
>14 years	—	2 single-strength or 1 double-strength tablet daily

Paediatric CTX prophylaxis is recommended for:

- All HIV-exposed children (i.e. all children whose mothers are known to have HIV) from 4–6 weeks of age until the child is no longer breastfeeding and is determined to be uninfected
- All HIV-infected children under 12 months
- All HIV-infected children 1–4 years with:
 - Clinical stage 2, 3 or 4 disease
 - CD4 < 25 %
- All HIV-infected children under 5 years with:
 - Clinical stage 3 or 4 disease
 - CD4 < 350
- All HIV-infected children with prior Pneumocystis pneumonia

Adapted from: Republic of Zambia Ministry of Health. (2007). *Zambian Guidelines for Antiretroviral Therapy of HIV Infection in Infants and Children*

Appendix 7-I Paediatric Initial History and Physical Form

PAEDIATRIC INITIAL HISTORY AND PHYSICAL Date / /

Patient ID - - - Facility ID (if different)

Patient Last Name Patient First Name Clinic code - -

BACKGROUND Sex: Female Male

Date of birth: / / Date is an estimate: Yes No

Age years months Does patient know his/her status? Yes No

Guardian Name

Relation to patient Mother Father Aunt/uncle Grandmother Other

Guardian NRC number: / /

If guardian is enrolled in HIV care, guardian's patient ID: - - -

Patient is referred from:
 Outpatient (OPD)
 TB corner/ chest clinic
 Inpatient
 MCH / PMTCT
 Youth-friendly corner
 General VCT
 Outside clinic
 Project
 Other

Initial HIV test: DNA PCR RNA PCR ELISA/Rapid test Other

Result Positive Negative Not available Place: / /

Follow up test: ELISA/Rapid test Other

Result Positive Negative Not available Place: / /

PMTCT Mother ingested PMTCT medication: Yes No Don't know

PMTCT regimen (tick all that apply): NVP AZT (ZDV) 3TC ART Specify:

When taken: antenatal how long? intrapartum postnatal how long?

NEONATAL HISTORY Birth weight kg

Gestation at birth: Term Preterm

Neonatal complications Yes No

Delivery mode:
 SVD
 Emergency C-section
 Elective C-section
 Other

IMMUNISATIONS OPV 0 BCG 1 Measles
 OPV 1 DPT 1 Other:
 OPV 2 DPT 2
 OPV 3 DPT 3

BREASTFEEDING Never breastfed
 Exclusive breastfeeding: Only colostrum < 1 mo 1 - 3 mos 3-6 mos
 Currently breastfeeding: Yes No
 Mixed feeding: Yes No If mixed, age at initiation (months):

PAST MEDICAL HISTORY Has the patient ever been diagnosed with the following diseases?

Recurrent pneumonia Yes No Persistent diarrhoea Yes No Parotid enlargement Yes No
 Oral thrush Yes No Very low weight Yes No Other
 Present /past ear discharge Yes No Enlarged lymph nodes Yes No

If yes, describe:

PAGE 1 OF 4 PAEDIATRIC INITIAL HISTORY AND PHYSICAL v3.2.2

Clerk initials Staff ID Staff signature

<p>TB HISTORY PAST TB EPISODE <input type="text"/> / <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> <input type="radio"/> Pulmonary <input type="radio"/> Extrapulmonary</p> <p>Household/know contact with Adult TB <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No Screen for TB; refer for INH prophylaxis</p> <p>Patient currently on TB medication <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>Current TB drugs: <input type="radio"/> INH/RIF/ETH/PZ <input type="radio"/> INH/RIF/ETH/PZ/Strep <input type="radio"/> INH/RIF/ETH <input type="radio"/> ETH/INH</p> <p>Date of current diagnosis: Day <input type="text"/> / Month <input type="text"/> / Year <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/></p> <p>Type of current TB: <input type="radio"/> Pulmonary: <input type="radio"/> Smear negative <input type="radio"/> Smear positive <input type="radio"/> Smear unknown <input type="radio"/> Extrapulmonary</p>	<p>FAMILY PLANNING</p> <p>Current patient/partner family planning:</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Not applicable</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> None</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Condoms</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Oral contraceptive pills</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Injectable/implanted hormones</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Other _____</p>																																																												
<p>Is patient currently pregnant? <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No Expected date of delivery: Day <input type="text"/> / Month <input type="text"/> / Year <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/></p>																																																													
<p>ARV DRUG HISTORY Did child get ARV treatment (not PMTCT) after 1 month of age?</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th rowspan="2"></th> <th colspan="2">NRTIs</th> <th colspan="2">NNRTIs</th> </tr> <tr> <th>Current?</th> <th>Reason stopped</th> <th>Current?</th> <th>Reason stopped</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/> Zidovudine (AZT)</td> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td><input type="checkbox"/> Nevirapine (NVP)</td> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/> Stavudine (D4T)</td> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td><input type="checkbox"/> Efavirenz (EFV)</td> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/> Lamivudine (3TC)</td> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td>PIs</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/> Abacavir (ABC)</td> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td><input type="checkbox"/> Lopinavir/r</td> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/> Tenofovir (TDF)</td> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td><input type="checkbox"/> Ritonavir (LPV/r)</td> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/> Didanosine (ddI)</td> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td><input type="checkbox"/> Indinavir (IDV)</td> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/> Emtricitabine (FTC)</td> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td><input type="checkbox"/> Nelfinavir (NFV)</td> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>REASONS FOR STOP</p> <table style="width: 100%;"> <tr> <td>A) Pregnancy</td> <td>I) Anaemia</td> </tr> <tr> <td>B) Treatment failure</td> <td>J) Neuropathy</td> </tr> <tr> <td>C) Poor adherence</td> <td>K) Rash</td> </tr> <tr> <td>D) TB medication</td> <td>L) Hepatitis</td> </tr> <tr> <td>E) Patient decision</td> <td>M) Pancreatitis</td> </tr> <tr> <td>F) Drug interaction</td> <td>N) Lactic acidosis</td> </tr> <tr> <td>G) Drug unavailable</td> <td>O) Other side effect</td> </tr> <tr> <td>H) Physician decision</td> <td></td> </tr> </table>		NRTIs		NNRTIs		Current?	Reason stopped	Current?	Reason stopped	<input type="checkbox"/> Zidovudine (AZT)	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Nevirapine (NVP)	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Stavudine (D4T)	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Efavirenz (EFV)	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Lamivudine (3TC)	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	PIs		<input type="checkbox"/> Abacavir (ABC)	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Lopinavir/r	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Tenofovir (TDF)	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Ritonavir (LPV/r)	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Didanosine (ddI)	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Indinavir (IDV)	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Emtricitabine (FTC)	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Nelfinavir (NFV)	<input type="checkbox"/>	A) Pregnancy	I) Anaemia	B) Treatment failure	J) Neuropathy	C) Poor adherence	K) Rash	D) TB medication	L) Hepatitis	E) Patient decision	M) Pancreatitis	F) Drug interaction	N) Lactic acidosis	G) Drug unavailable	O) Other side effect	H) Physician decision		<p>OTHER CURRENT MEDICATIONS</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Septrin</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Fluconazole</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Anti-malarials</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Traditional meds</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Other _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Other _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Other _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Other _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Other _____</p>
		NRTIs		NNRTIs																																																									
	Current?	Reason stopped	Current?	Reason stopped																																																									
<input type="checkbox"/> Zidovudine (AZT)	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Nevirapine (NVP)	<input type="checkbox"/>																																																									
<input type="checkbox"/> Stavudine (D4T)	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Efavirenz (EFV)	<input type="checkbox"/>																																																									
<input type="checkbox"/> Lamivudine (3TC)	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	PIs																																																										
<input type="checkbox"/> Abacavir (ABC)	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Lopinavir/r	<input type="checkbox"/>																																																									
<input type="checkbox"/> Tenofovir (TDF)	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Ritonavir (LPV/r)	<input type="checkbox"/>																																																									
<input type="checkbox"/> Didanosine (ddI)	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Indinavir (IDV)	<input type="checkbox"/>																																																									
<input type="checkbox"/> Emtricitabine (FTC)	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Nelfinavir (NFV)	<input type="checkbox"/>																																																									
A) Pregnancy	I) Anaemia																																																												
B) Treatment failure	J) Neuropathy																																																												
C) Poor adherence	K) Rash																																																												
D) TB medication	L) Hepatitis																																																												
E) Patient decision	M) Pancreatitis																																																												
F) Drug interaction	N) Lactic acidosis																																																												
G) Drug unavailable	O) Other side effect																																																												
H) Physician decision																																																													
<p>Drug allergies: _____</p>																																																													
<p>PRESENTING COMPLAINT <i>Tick at left if patient mentions any complaints listed. Note duration, recurrence below.</i></p> <table style="width: 100%;"> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/> Routine visit</td> <td><input type="checkbox"/> Cough < 2 weeks</td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/> No complaint</td> <td><input type="checkbox"/> Cough > 2 weeks</td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/> Weight loss</td> <td><input type="checkbox"/> Shortness of breath</td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/> Fever</td> <td><input type="checkbox"/> Acute diarrhoea</td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/> Lethargic</td> <td><input type="checkbox"/> Chronic diarrhoea</td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/> Swelling of feet</td> <td><input type="checkbox"/> Difficulty drinking</td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/> Rash</td> <td><input type="checkbox"/> Sores in mouth</td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/> Convulsions</td> <td><input type="checkbox"/> Swellings/lymph nodes</td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/> Vomiting</td> <td><input type="checkbox"/> Eye/ear pain/discharge</td> </tr> </table>		<input type="checkbox"/> Routine visit	<input type="checkbox"/> Cough < 2 weeks	<input type="checkbox"/> No complaint	<input type="checkbox"/> Cough > 2 weeks	<input type="checkbox"/> Weight loss	<input type="checkbox"/> Shortness of breath	<input type="checkbox"/> Fever	<input type="checkbox"/> Acute diarrhoea	<input type="checkbox"/> Lethargic	<input type="checkbox"/> Chronic diarrhoea	<input type="checkbox"/> Swelling of feet	<input type="checkbox"/> Difficulty drinking	<input type="checkbox"/> Rash	<input type="checkbox"/> Sores in mouth	<input type="checkbox"/> Convulsions	<input type="checkbox"/> Swellings/lymph nodes	<input type="checkbox"/> Vomiting	<input type="checkbox"/> Eye/ear pain/discharge																																										
<input type="checkbox"/> Routine visit	<input type="checkbox"/> Cough < 2 weeks																																																												
<input type="checkbox"/> No complaint	<input type="checkbox"/> Cough > 2 weeks																																																												
<input type="checkbox"/> Weight loss	<input type="checkbox"/> Shortness of breath																																																												
<input type="checkbox"/> Fever	<input type="checkbox"/> Acute diarrhoea																																																												
<input type="checkbox"/> Lethargic	<input type="checkbox"/> Chronic diarrhoea																																																												
<input type="checkbox"/> Swelling of feet	<input type="checkbox"/> Difficulty drinking																																																												
<input type="checkbox"/> Rash	<input type="checkbox"/> Sores in mouth																																																												
<input type="checkbox"/> Convulsions	<input type="checkbox"/> Swellings/lymph nodes																																																												
<input type="checkbox"/> Vomiting	<input type="checkbox"/> Eye/ear pain/discharge																																																												
<p>REVIEW OF SYSTEMS <i>Within the past month, has the patient experienced any of the following symptoms:</i></p> <table style="width: 100%;"> <tr> <td style="width: 33%; vertical-align: top;"> <p>CONSTITUTIONAL</p> <p>Irritability <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>Inconsolable crying <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>Fatigue (tired) <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>* Fever <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>* Night sweats <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>Appetite loss <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>* Weight loss <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>GASTROINTESTINAL</p> <p>Diarrhoea <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>Nausea and/or vomiting <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>Oral lesions <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>Pain/difficulty swallowing <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>Abdominal pain <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> </td> <td style="width: 33%; vertical-align: top;"> <p>CARDIO-RESPIRATORY</p> <p>*Productive cough <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>*Non-productive cough <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>*Haemoptysis <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>*Difficulty breathing/SOB <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>Dizziness <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>Palpitations <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>Swelling of legs <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>NEUROLOGICAL</p> <p>Delayed milestones <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>Encephalopathy <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>Changes in developmental milestones <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>Headache <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> </td> <td style="width: 33%; vertical-align: top;"> <p>Memory problems <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>Visual problems <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>Confusion <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>Numbness/pain/burning in legs/feet <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>Weakness in limbs <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>Seizures <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>GENITAL-URINARY</p> <p>Dysuria <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>Haematuria <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>OTHER</p> <p>Napkin dermatitis <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>Rash <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>Joint pain/swelling <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> </td> </tr> </table> <p>Last recorded weight: _____ Date weight taken (mo/yr): _____</p> <p><i>If yes, describe:</i></p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p>		<p>CONSTITUTIONAL</p> <p>Irritability <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>Inconsolable crying <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>Fatigue (tired) <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>* Fever <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>* Night sweats <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>Appetite loss <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>* Weight loss <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>GASTROINTESTINAL</p> <p>Diarrhoea <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>Nausea and/or vomiting <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>Oral lesions <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>Pain/difficulty swallowing <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>Abdominal pain <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p>	<p>CARDIO-RESPIRATORY</p> <p>*Productive cough <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>*Non-productive cough <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>*Haemoptysis <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>*Difficulty breathing/SOB <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>Dizziness <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>Palpitations <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>Swelling of legs <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>NEUROLOGICAL</p> <p>Delayed milestones <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>Encephalopathy <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>Changes in developmental milestones <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>Headache <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p>	<p>Memory problems <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>Visual problems <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>Confusion <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>Numbness/pain/burning in legs/feet <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>Weakness in limbs <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>Seizures <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>GENITAL-URINARY</p> <p>Dysuria <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>Haematuria <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>OTHER</p> <p>Napkin dermatitis <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>Rash <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>Joint pain/swelling <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p>																																																									
<p>CONSTITUTIONAL</p> <p>Irritability <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>Inconsolable crying <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>Fatigue (tired) <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>* Fever <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>* Night sweats <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>Appetite loss <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>* Weight loss <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>GASTROINTESTINAL</p> <p>Diarrhoea <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>Nausea and/or vomiting <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>Oral lesions <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>Pain/difficulty swallowing <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>Abdominal pain <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p>	<p>CARDIO-RESPIRATORY</p> <p>*Productive cough <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>*Non-productive cough <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>*Haemoptysis <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>*Difficulty breathing/SOB <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>Dizziness <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>Palpitations <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>Swelling of legs <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>NEUROLOGICAL</p> <p>Delayed milestones <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>Encephalopathy <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>Changes in developmental milestones <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>Headache <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p>	<p>Memory problems <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>Visual problems <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>Confusion <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>Numbness/pain/burning in legs/feet <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>Weakness in limbs <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>Seizures <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>GENITAL-URINARY</p> <p>Dysuria <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>Haematuria <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>OTHER</p> <p>Napkin dermatitis <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>Rash <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p> <p>Joint pain/swelling <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</p>																																																											
<p><small>* If symptom present, screen for TB using TB Diagnostic Worksheet (where in use)</small></p>																																																													
<p>PAGE 2 OF 4 PAEDIATRIC INITIAL HISTORY AND PHYSICAL v3.2.2</p> <p style="text-align: right;">Clerk initials _____ Staff ID _____ Staff signature _____</p>																																																													

DEVELOPMENTAL ASSESSMENT				Appropriate for age? <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No
3 MONTHS	9 MONTHS	24 MONTHS	48 MONTHS	
<input type="radio"/> Holds head	<input type="radio"/> Stands supported	<input type="radio"/> Washes hands	<input type="radio"/> Hops on one foot	
<input type="radio"/> Smiles	12 MONTHS	<input type="radio"/> Jumps up	<input type="radio"/> Dresses alone	
<input type="radio"/> Starting to roll from front to back	<input type="radio"/> Pulls to stand	<input type="radio"/> Combines words	<input type="radio"/> Can draw a stick man	
6 MONTHS	18 MONTHS	36 MONTHS	60 MONTHS	
<input type="radio"/> Sits unsupported	<input type="radio"/> Can remove clothing	<input type="radio"/> Can put on shirt	<input type="radio"/> Heel-to-toe walks	
<input type="radio"/> Babbles	<input type="radio"/> Scribbles	<input type="radio"/> Speech understandable	<input type="radio"/> Counts to 10	
	<input type="radio"/> Runs	<input type="radio"/> Balances on one foot		

PHYSICAL EXAM		Height (cm)	Weight (kg)	SD <input type="radio"/> >M <input type="radio"/> 1 <input type="radio"/> 2 <input type="radio"/> 3 <input type="radio"/> 4
Head circum (cm)	BP	/	Temp	Heart rate
				Resp rate
	Normal Abnormal	Describe any abnormal findings below		General: <input type="checkbox"/> Pallor <input type="checkbox"/> Jaundice <input type="checkbox"/> Edema
Skin	<input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/>			
Eyes	<input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/>			
Ears, nose	<input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/>			
Oral	<input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/>			
Lymph nodes	<input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/>			
Heart	<input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/>			
Lungs	<input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/>			
Abdomen	<input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/>			
Urogenital	<input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/>			
Musculoskeletal	<input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/>			
Neurological	<input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/>			
Tanner staging <input type="radio"/> 1 <input type="radio"/> 2 <input type="radio"/> 3 <input type="radio"/> 4 <input type="radio"/> 5				

WHO STAGING	STAGE 3	STAGE 4
STAGE 1	<input type="checkbox"/> Mod. malnutrition (wt loss -2SD / failure to gain weight on R)	<input type="checkbox"/> Severe wasting/malnutrition (wt loss -3 SD +/- oedema)
<input type="checkbox"/> Asymptomatic HIV infection	<input type="checkbox"/> Diarrhoea (> 14 days)	<input type="checkbox"/> Pneumocystis pneumonia
<input type="checkbox"/> Persistent gen. lymphadenopathy	<input type="checkbox"/> Fever (> 1 mo, > 37.5 degrees, intermittent or constant)	<input type="checkbox"/> Severe recurrent bact inf (excl pneu)
STAGE 2	<input type="checkbox"/> Persistent oral candida, > 6 wks age	<input type="checkbox"/> Chronic HSV (> 1 mo) at any site
<input type="checkbox"/> Hepatosplenomegaly	<input type="checkbox"/> Oral hairy leukoplakia	<input type="checkbox"/> EPTB
<input type="checkbox"/> Papular pruritic eruptions (PPE)	<input type="checkbox"/> Necrotizing gingivitis	<input type="checkbox"/> Kaposi's sarcoma
<input type="checkbox"/> Extensive wart infections	<input type="checkbox"/> Lymph node TB	<input type="checkbox"/> Candida (oesophageal, trachea, bronchus or lungs)
<input type="checkbox"/> Extensive molluscum	<input type="checkbox"/> Pulmonary TB	<input type="checkbox"/> CNS toxoplasmosis (excl neonates)
<input type="checkbox"/> Recurrent oral ulcers	<input type="checkbox"/> Severe recurrent bact pneumonia	<input type="checkbox"/> HIV encephalopathy
<input type="checkbox"/> Parotid enlargement	<input type="checkbox"/> LIP (symptomatic)	<input type="checkbox"/> Cryptococcosis
<input type="checkbox"/> Gingival erythema	<input type="checkbox"/> HIV-associated chronic lung disease	<input type="checkbox"/> Disseminated mycoses (histo, coccid, penicill, cryptosporid)
<input type="checkbox"/> Herpes zoster	<input type="checkbox"/> Anaemia (< 8 g/dl)	<input type="checkbox"/> Chronic isosporiasis
<input type="checkbox"/> Recurrent/chronic URTIs	<input type="checkbox"/> Neutropenia (< 0.5 x 10 ⁹ /l)	<input type="checkbox"/> Non-TB mycobacteria
<input type="checkbox"/> Fungal nail infections	<input type="checkbox"/> Thrombocytopenia < 50	<input type="checkbox"/> NHL (cerebral or B cell)
		<input type="checkbox"/> PML
		<input type="checkbox"/> HIV-assoc. cardiomyopathy/nephropathy
WHO Stage today <input type="radio"/> 1 <input type="radio"/> 2 <input type="radio"/> 3 <input type="radio"/> 4		

Functional status: Healthy, able to go to school Sick, able to go to school Sick, unable to go to school Bedridden

ASSESSMENT Opportunistic infections should be ticked above under WHO Staging.

New clinical findings Yes No
 Any acute illnesses? Yes No
 Does the child need any blood tests today? Yes No *If yes, complete below*
 Does the child require any counselling today? Yes No
 If yes: Disclosure counselling Adherence counselling Bereavement counselling Other _____
 Does the child require any other referrals? Yes No *If yes, indicate below*

PLAN Assess for ART Eligibility
 Continue ART *Use the ARV Eligibility form to initiate / continue / modify treatment.*
 Modify ART
 Stop ART

Vaccinations due:
 BCG
 DPT/HBV/HIB
 OPV
 Measles
 Other _____

Counseling needs of child:
 The child is aware that he/she is sick with a chronic disease
 The child is aware of the name of the disease
 The child can swallow pills/tablets/capsules
 An immediate family member has recently died of HIV/AIDS at home
 The child has recently had a disruption of routine life (school, play, friends)

PRESCRIPTIONS Pregnant? <input type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> Septrin prophylaxis ___ ml od <input type="radio"/> Start <input type="radio"/> Continue <input type="radio"/> Stop <input type="checkbox"/> Septrin treatment ___ ml X ___ days <input type="checkbox"/> Fluconazole maint. ___ mg od <input type="radio"/> Start <input type="radio"/> Continue <input type="radio"/> Stop <input type="checkbox"/> Fluconazole treat. ___ mg X ___ days <input type="checkbox"/> Antibiotic ___ : ___ mg X ___ days <input type="checkbox"/> Antifungal ___ : ___ mg X ___ days <input type="checkbox"/> Fansidar _____ <input type="checkbox"/> Coartem _____ <input type="checkbox"/> Other _____ <input type="checkbox"/> Multivit 1 tab od <input type="checkbox"/> Iron 200mg tds x1mo <input type="checkbox"/> Folate 5mg od x1mo		TB DRUGS <input type="radio"/> INH/RIF/PZ ___ tabs od x ___ mo <input type="checkbox"/> Strep ___ mg im od x ___ mo <input type="radio"/> ETH/INH ___ tabs od x ___ mo <input type="radio"/> INH/RIF ___ tabs od x ___ mo	INVESTIGATIONS <input type="checkbox"/> None <input type="checkbox"/> HIV: PCR <input type="checkbox"/> HIV: ELISA/Rapid <input type="checkbox"/> CD4 count <input type="checkbox"/> Hemoglobin/hematocrit <input type="checkbox"/> Full blood count <input type="checkbox"/> ALT/AST <input type="checkbox"/> Creatinine <input type="checkbox"/> *Sputum AFB <input type="checkbox"/> Chest X-ray <input type="checkbox"/> Pregnancy <input type="checkbox"/> RPR <input type="checkbox"/> TLC <input type="checkbox"/> Amylase/lipase <input type="checkbox"/> Viral load <input type="checkbox"/> Other _____	REFERRALS <input type="checkbox"/> None <input type="checkbox"/> Family planning <input type="checkbox"/> Nutritional support <input type="checkbox"/> Inpatient care (this facility) <input type="checkbox"/> Inpatient care: _____ <input type="checkbox"/> *TB treatment/DOT program <input type="checkbox"/> Counseling <input type="checkbox"/> Treatment preparation <input type="checkbox"/> Psychosocial support <input type="checkbox"/> Community health worker <input type="checkbox"/> Consented to HBC <input type="checkbox"/> Other _____ <small>*If suspect TB, complete TB Diagnostic Worksheet (where in use)</small>
---	--	--	--	---

Do at next visit:

Next clinical appointment should be in:
 1 wk 2 wks 3 wks 1 mo 3 mos 6 mos Other _____

Date of next visit:
 / /
Day Month Year

Source: Republic of Zambia Ministry of Health. (2007). *Zambian Guidelines for Antiretroviral Therapy of HIV Infection in Infants and Children*

Appendix 7-J WHO Staging for Children

WHO Staging for Children with Established HIV Infection

Clinical Stages	
Clinical Stage 1	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Asymptomatic 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Persistent generalised lymphadenopathy
Clinical Stage 2	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Unexplained persistent hepatosplenomegaly ▪ Papular pruritic eruptions ▪ Extensive wart virus infection ▪ Extensive molluscum contagiosum ▪ Recurrent oral ulcerations ▪ Unexplained persistent parotid enlargement 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Lineal gingival erythema ▪ Herpes zoster ▪ Recurrent or chronic upper respiratory tract infection (otitis media, otorrhea, sinusitis, tonsillitis) ▪ Fungal nail infections
Clinical Stage 3	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Unexplained moderate malnutrition not adequately responding to standard therapy ▪ Unexplained persistent diarrhoea (14 days or more) ▪ Unexplained persistent fever (above 37.5°C intermittent or constant, for longer than 1 month) ▪ Persistent oral Candida (outside first 6–8 weeks of life) ▪ Oral hairy leukoplakia ▪ Acute necrotizing ulcerative gingivitis/periodontitis 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Lymph node TB ▪ Pulmonary TB ▪ Severe recurrent presumed bacterial pneumonia ▪ Symptomatic lymphoid interstitial pneumonitis ▪ Chronic HIV-associated lung disease including bronchiectasis ▪ Unexplained anaemia (<8g/dl), neutropenia (<05 x 10⁹) or chronic thrombocytopenia (<50 x 10⁹/l)
Clinical Stage 4	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Unexplained severe wasting, stunting or severe malnutrition not responding to standard therapy ▪ Pneumocystis pneumonia ▪ Recurrent severe bacterial infections (e.g. empyema, pyomyositis, bone or joint infection, meningitis, but excluding pneumonia) ▪ Chronic herpes simplex 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Cytomegalovirus (CMV) infection; retinitis or CMV infection affecting another organ, with onset at age >1 month. ▪ Extra pulmonary cryptococcosis including meningitis ▪ Disseminated endemic mycosis (extra pulmonary histoplasmosis, coccidiomycosis, penicilliosis) ▪ Chronic Cryptosporidiosis ▪ Chronic Isosporiasis

<p>infection; (orolabial or cutaneous > 1 month's duration or visceral at any site)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Extra pulmonary tuberculosis ■ Kaposi sarcoma ■ Esophageal candidacies (or Candida of trachea, bronchi or lungs) ■ Central nervous system toxoplasmosis (outside the neonatal period) ■ HIV encephalopathy 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Disseminated non-tuberculous mycobacteria infection ■ Acquired HIV-associated rectal fistula ■ Cerebral or B cell non-Hodgkin lymphoma <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy ■ HIV-associated cardiomyopathy or HIV-associated nephropathy
---	---

Adapted from: Republic of Zambia Ministry of Health. (2007): *Zambian Guidelines for Antiretroviral Therapy of HIV Infection in Infants and Children*

Appendix 7-K Paediatric ART Eligibility

WHO Recommendations on When to Start ART in Children, According to Age, Clinical Stage and Laboratory Measures

Treatment Based on WHO Staging			
WHO Paediatric Stage	Availability of CD4 cell measurements	WHO Age Specific Treatment Recommendation	
		<12 months	>12 months
4 ^a	CD4	Treat all	
	No CD4 ^b		
3 ^a	CD4	Treat all	Treat all; CD4 guided in those children with TB ^c , LIP, OHL, thrombocytopenia
	No CD4 ^b		Treat all ^c
2	CD4	Treat all	CD4-guided
	No CD4 ^b	Treat all	TLC-guided
1	CD4	Treat all	CD4-guided
	No CD4 ^b	Treat all	Do not treat
LIP-lymphocytic interstitial pneumonia; OHL-Oral hairy leukoplakia; TB-tuberculosis ^a Stabilise any opportunistic infection prior to initiation of ART. ^b Baseline CD4 is useful to monitor ART even if it is not required to initiate ART. ^c In children with pulmonary or lymph node TB, the CD4 level and clinical status should be used to determine the need for and timing of initiation of ART in relation to TB treatment.			

Summary of WHO recommendations for ART initiation in children

- **Children with established HIV infection should start ART if they:**
 - Are twelve months of age and younger (irrespective of CD4 or clinical stage) OR
- **Children with established HIV infection classified as:**
 - WHO Paediatric Clinical Stage 4 disease (irrespective of CD4)
 - WHO Paediatric Clinical Stage 3 disease (irrespective of CD4 although it may add guidance); for children aged older than 12 months with tuberculosis or lymphocytic interstitial pneumonia or oral hairy leukoplakia or thrombocytopenia; if CD4 is available, ART initiation may be delayed; if CD4 is below threshold of 350, initiate ART
 - WHO Paediatric Clinical Stage 2 disease and CD4 or TLC^b value at or below threshold of 350

- WHO Paediatric Clinical Stage 1 disease and CD4 value at or below threshold of 350.
- Where virological testing is not available to confirm HIV infection, HIV antibody positive children less than 18 months of age should be considered for ART if they have clinically diagnosed Presumed Severe HIV disease.

Adapted from: Republic of Zambia Ministry of Health. (2007). *Zambian Guidelines for Antiretroviral Therapy of HIV Infection in Infants and Children*.

Appendix 7-L Paediatric ART Regimens in Zambia

Summary of recommended preferred first-line ARV regimens for children

Regimen of 2 NRTI plus 1 NNRTI^a: [A (II)]*

AZT^b +3TC^c +NVP^d/ EFV^e

d4T^b +3TC^c +NVP^d/ EFV^e

ABC +3TC^c +NVP^d/ EFV^e

Notes:

* Strength of recommendation/level of evidence

- a. The use of AZT, d4T, ABC with 3TC results in several possible dual nucleoside combinations including AZT +3TC; d4T +3TC; ABC +3TC.
- b. AZT should not be given in combination with d4T.
- c. Where available, FTC can be used instead of 3TC in children older than 3 months of age.
- d. NVP should be avoided in post pubertal adolescent girls (considered as adults for treatment purposes) with baseline CD4 absolute cell counts >250/mm³.
- e. EFV is not currently recommended for children under 3 years of age or under 10kg, and should be avoided in post pubertal adolescent girls who are either in 1st trimester of pregnancy or are sexually active and not receiving adequate contraception.

Recommended alternative ARV regimen for children to simplify management of toxicity, co-morbidity and drug-drug interaction

Regimen of Triple NRTI: [C (III)]*

AZT/d4T^a +3TC^b +ABC

Notes:

* Strength of recommendation/level of evidence

- a. AZT should not be given in combination with d4T
- b. Where available, FTC can be used instead of 3TC.

Appendix 7-M Practical Tips on Giving Paediatric ART

Measurement of daily doses:

Paediatric dosing must be precise to ensure adequate therapeutic levels. When possible, caregivers should use syringes to measure and administer liquid medication. Caregivers should be discouraged from using household spoons as they may vary in size, which can lead to inaccurate dosing.

- Use brightly coloured tape or permanent marker to mark the correct volume of syringes.
- Use a different syringe for each medication. Consider labelling each type of syringe and its appropriate bottle with the same colour tape.
- Syringes can be reused until the markings or tape begins to wear off or the plunger becomes difficult to manipulate. Syringes should be gently washed with warm soapy water, rinsed well and allowed to air dry.
- Have the caregiver practise drawing up medication while at the clinic. Discuss common problems and solutions with measuring liquids, e.g., what if the medicine is too sticky? What if it spills?

Medication storage:

It is best to avoid high temperatures for all medication. Medication should not be stored in direct sunlight or in other spots likely to become very hot. Most drugs should be kept in a cool place. In particular, Lopinavir/Ritonavir (Kaletra®) needs to be stored in a cool place. If refrigeration is available, caregivers should be informed to keep this medication in the refrigerator. If not, ask where in the home cool items are stored — is there a cool pot, extra water jug or cooler?

Lopinavir/Ritonavir liquid must be stored in a glass container, as the liquid may corrode plastic. The pharmacist will dispense this medication in a glass container, and patients should be advised to draw medication into the syringes only at the time of administration. A filled syringe should not be used to store or transport doses.

Masking the taste of medication:

- For liquid medication, first draw up the medicine in a syringe to measure the proper volume. Combine with 5–10 cc of tasty liquid such as juice, milk or non-alcoholic beverage. Do not combine with large volumes. Mix vigorously. Be sure that the caregiver is aware the child must drink the full amount.

- Alternatively, dip the syringe tip into something sweet to mask the initial taste or give small amounts of beverage pre- and post-medication administration.
- For pills, crush with a mortar and pestle until fine. For capsules, open the capsule into a small bowl. Add 1–2 teaspoons of food (jelly, jam, crushed banana, cereal) and combine vigorously. Feed child all of the food to ensure that all medication is consumed.
- Review which medication in tablet form can be broken in half and swallowed for older children. Hard tablets may be dipped and coated with sauce or any other viscous food product to help the older children swallow pills.
- Immediately after administering medication, offer child a sweet-tasting food to mask the taste of the medication. Administration of sweet or tangy substance prior to giving medication may also be helpful.
- Remember to give lots of praise after each dose!

Avoiding or minimising nausea:

- It is important to ask if the medication causes nausea, since this will be a powerful barrier to adherence. If the medication does make children nauseated, the following interventions may be helpful.
- Offer the child a small meal of bland food (cereal, crackers and bread). Shortly thereafter, administer medication.
- Administer tablets and capsules with only enough water or beverage needed to swallow. Children have a tendency to drink much more water than necessary, which often leads to vomiting due to the large volume of liquid.
- Reassure the caregiver that the nausea is usually temporary until the child's body gets used to the medicine. Stress the importance of giving meds in a calm, unhurried manner, especially during the first few weeks.

Behavioural suggestions:

- When caregivers make taking medications into a routine, it will be easier for the child and caregiver stick to the medication schedule and avoid missing doses.
- For medications that are bad-tasting, in addition to masking the taste, caregivers might offer a reward, such as a sweet, or a special treat, for taking the medication.
- As children get older, having them take more control over medication, with caregivers watching, will allow the children to feel more of a sense of independence over taking the medication.
- Caregivers should also know that during adolescence, medication adherence may become an issue for teenagers, as they try to become more independent of adults; challenges and questions should be answered with honesty with a focus on the need for the medications to remain healthy.

References and Resources

Republic of Zambia Ministry of Health. (2008). Paediatric HIV Care Training Course, 3rd ed.

Republic of Zambia Ministry of Health. (2007). *Zambian Guidelines for Antiretroviral Therapy of HIV Infection in Infants and Children: Towards Universal Access.*

Republic of Zambia Ministry of Health. (2009). *National Guidelines for Paediatric Provider-initiated HIV Testing and Counselling.*

WHO. (2006). *Revised WHO clinical staging and immunological classification of HIV and case definition of HIV for surveillance.*

WHO (2008). *Scale up of HIV related Prevention, Diagnosis, care and treatment for infants and children: A programming framework.*
http://www.unicef.org/aids/files/OMS_PAEDS_Programming_Frameworkorks_WEB.pdf

WHO/CDC. (2008). *Prevention of mother-to-child transmission of HIV: Generic Training Package, Draft trainer manual.*

-
- ¹ WHO (2008). *Scale up of HIV related Prevention, Diagnosis, care and treatment for infants and children: A programming framework.*
http://www.unicef.org/aids/files/OMS_PAEDS_Programming_Frameworkorks_WEB.pdf
- ² Royal College of Paediatrics and Child Health (2009): *Measuring and Plotting using the new UK-WHO Growth Charts.* Available at:
http://www.rcpch.ac.uk/Research/Growth_Charts_Education_Training_Resources

Module 8 Record Keeping, Monitoring and Quality Assurance



Total Module Time: 135 minutes (2 hours, 15 minutes)

Learning Objectives

After completing this module, participants will be able to:

- Describe the purpose of monitoring and evaluation.
- Describe how indicators and targets are used in the process of monitoring and evaluation.
- Discuss the relationship between record keeping and monitoring and evaluation.
- Describe the data collection tools used for monitoring of paediatric PITC programmes.
- Describe the purpose of quality assurance (QA).
- Define and describe supportive supervision.

Methodologies	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Interactive trainer presentation ▪ Group work ▪ Discussion

Materials Needed	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Flip chart ▪ Markers ▪ Tape or Bostik ▪ All forms and registers used for paediatric PITC services ▪ The trainer should have the slide set for Module 8. ▪ The trainer should bring A3 size copies of the <i>General HIV Counselling and Testing Register</i> and the <i>Counselling and Testing Activity Sheet</i> so that each participant has a copy. Also bring a sample ward or clinic register and provide extra copies of the <i>Paediatric Patient Locator</i>, <i>DNA PCR Laboratory Requisition Form</i>, <i>Specimen Delivery Checklist</i>, the <i>Under-Five Card</i> and <i>Mother's Card</i>. Participants will review the forms in anticipation of having to complete some of them during the hospital-based practicum sessions. ▪ Participants should have their Participant Manuals. The Participant Manual contains background technical content and information for the exercises.

References and Resources



- National Guidelines for Paediatric Provider-initiated HIV Testing and Counselling

Advance Preparation



- Exercise 1 requires advance preparation. Please review the exercise ahead of time.
- Review the appendices in this module ahead of time and make extra photocopies of forms and register pages for participants before the practicum session.
- Bring A3 size copies of the *General HIV Counselling and Testing Register* and the *Counselling and Testing Activity Sheet* for each participant. Also bring a sample ward or clinic register. Participants will review the forms and practice inserting data.
- If possible, bring samples of completed forms and registers to serve as examples for participants.

Session 8.1: PITC Programme Monitoring

Activity/Method	Time
Interactive trainer presentation (Slides 1–22)	25 minutes
Exercise 1: Using paediatric PITC data for decision-making: Small group work and large group discussion	40 minutes
Questions and answers	5 minutes
Total Session Time	70 minutes

Session 8.2: Paediatric PITC Data Collection

Activity/Method	Time
Interactive trainer presentation (Slides 26–38)	20 minutes
Questions and answers	5 minutes
Total Session Time	25 minutes

Session 8.3: Quality Assurance and Supportive Supervision

Activity/Method	Time
Interactive trainer presentation (Slides 40–56)	25 minutes
Questions and answers	5 minutes
Review of key points (Slides 58–60)	10 minutes
Total Session Time	40 minutes

Session 8.1 P1TC Programme Monitoring



Total Session Time: 70 minutes



Trainer Instructions

Slides 1–3

Step 1: Begin by reviewing the Module 8 Learning Objectives (page 8-1) and Session Objectives, listed below.

Session Objectives

After completing this session participants will be able to:

- Describe the purpose of monitoring and evaluation.
- Describe how indicators and targets are used in the process of monitoring and evaluation.
- Discuss the relationship between record keeping and monitoring and evaluation.



Trainer Instructions

Slides 4–17

Step 2: Ask participants why it is important to keep records and monitor our work. Ask if they know how the data (information) that they record for the purpose of monitoring and evaluation is used at the facility level and at the national level.

Make the point that often, healthcare workers are overwhelmed with forms and reports — discuss why healthcare workers need to spend so much time on these activities, drawing on participants' experiences.

Step 3: Discuss monitoring; give examples of how we monitor our work. Then define indicators, again, giving examples of indicators as you go along.

Then discuss evaluation as a way of assessing the change in indicator measurements. Use Table 8.1 to illustrate how all the steps are interconnected.



Make These Points

- Monitoring and evaluation is the standardised process by which data related to the delivery of PITC services is collected and evaluated. This data can be used to monitor progress in the implementation of PITC services from the facility perspective in addition to the evaluation conducted at the district and national levels.
- Monitoring is the routine collection and tracking of data about key programme elements over time.
- Targets are specific goals established before a new programme or service is implemented or established at specific times (e.g. annually setting targets for the number of children of unknown HIV status who are tested).
- Indicators reflect key service interventions and provide information about activities and results. Indicators can be calculated for facility, district or national levels depending on need and how the data will be used.
- Evaluation is the process of tracking changes in indicators that reflect service delivery and determining whether pre-established targets are reached.

Monitoring

Monitoring is the routine collection and tracking of data about programme performance over time. Monitoring is a process that helps to ensure that implementation problems are identified early and corrected quickly. This requires that data be collected, compiled and analysed on a routine basis.

Monitoring can only answer those questions for which the programme is routinely collecting accurate data. As such, the healthcare worker plays a vital role in the monitoring process by regularly documenting data such as the number of children admitted to the ward, the number of caregivers provided with pre-test information, the number of children tested for HIV and the number of caregivers who receive results and participate in post-test counselling.

Targets are specific goals established before a new programme or service is implemented and on a regular basis thereafter. For example, at the initiation of a paediatric PITC programme, a target may be “To test at least 90% of children of unknown HIV status who are admitted to the hospital.” Once the programme is well-established and meeting this target, the target would be re-evaluated, with the aim of continuous programme improvement.

Table 8.1: The purpose of PITC programme monitoring

Paediatric PITC programme monitoring will help:	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Assess whether the programme is meeting its established targets. 	<p>Example: If a facility's target is to test at least 90% of children of unknown HIV status who are admitted to the hospital, the following data might be collected to determine if the target was met:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The total number of hospitalised children tested for HIV The total number of children of unknown HIV status admitted to the hospital <p>To determine the percentage of eligible children tested for HIV, e.g. 90 hospitalised children tested out of 100 hospitalised children eligible for testing = $90/100 \times 100\% = 90\%$</p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Identify and improve problem areas in PITC programming. 	<p>Example: If monitoring data shows that only 75% of eligible hospitalised children are tested for HIV (far short of the 90% target), then barriers to the implementation of paediatric PITC must be identified and strategies developed to address these barriers.</p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Improve utilisation of PITC programme resources. 	<p>Example: Monitoring data can focus efforts to improve services. So, in the above example, supervisors would want to focus attention on improving the 75% testing rate, probably by researching employee and client barriers to testing. Barriers to the uptake of PITC service uptake may include: lack of trained staff; stock-outs of HIV rapid antibody test kits; or problems in the identification of children of unknown HIV status. Identification of the problem is the first step toward revising procedures to fix the problem.</p>

Indicators

Indicators measure things such as number of new patients tested and informed of their HIV status and the length of time it takes for DNA PCR results to be returned. PITC indicators are established on a national level according to the needs, resources and standards of the programme and defined in line with internationally-accepted definitions.

Though standardised indicators are identified at the national level, they can be calculated for facility, district or national levels depending on need and

Indicators reflect key service interventions and provide information about activities and results. Indicators can be calculated for facility, district or national levels depending on need and how the data will be used.

how the data will be used. National level indicators generally cover service delivery, quality of care and management-related information. At the facility level, planners and managers require more detailed information to make decisions about how best to spend the facility's resources to meet the needs of clients and ensure quality of care. Facility-level indicators can help to identify progress, problems, challenges and solutions in the delivery of PITC services at a specific site. Indicators may need to be revised periodically (e.g. in response to changes in national guidelines for the programme or services being monitored).

Examples of indicators are shown in Table 8.2; note that not all of these indicators are collected at the national level, but they may be useful at the facility level.

Table 8.2: Example of paediatric PITC programme monitoring indicators

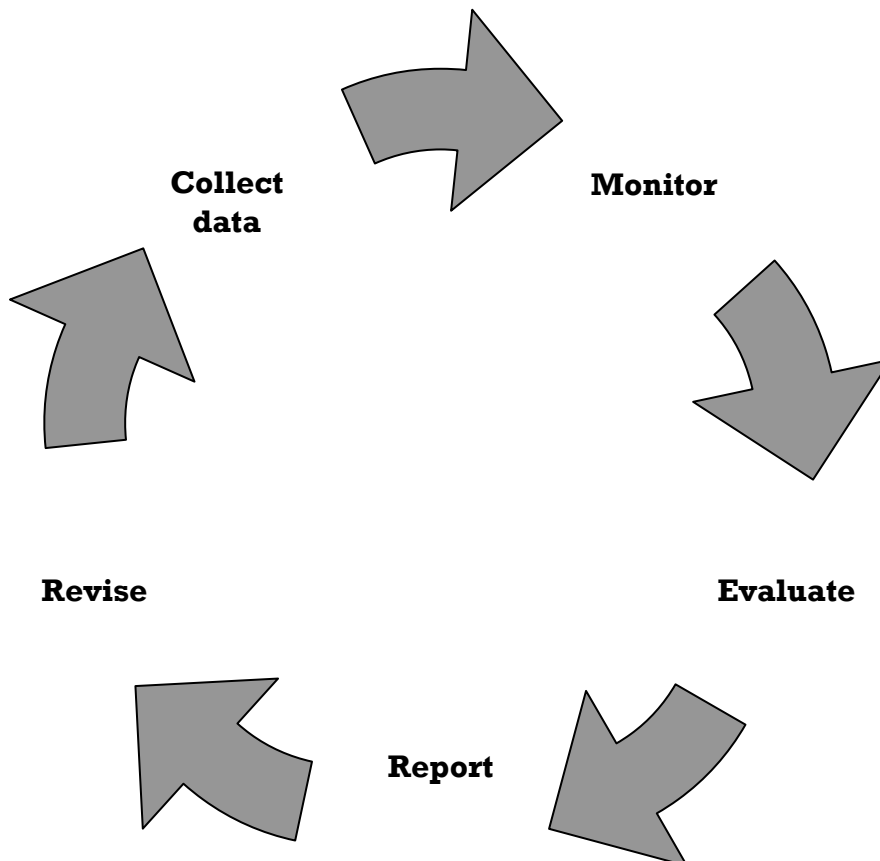
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Number of children admitted/seen at a given health facilities ■ Number of caregivers/children eligible for HIV testing ■ Number and percent of caregivers/children offered testing and counselling ■ Number and percent of caregivers/children attending a pre-test session ■ Number and percent of caregivers/children tested for HIV ■ Number and percent of caregivers/children provided with post-test counselling ■ Number and percent of HIV-antibody positive test results: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Less than 18 months of age ■ 18 months of age and older ■ Number and percent of HIV-exposed infants tested using DNA PCR ■ Number and percent of HIV-exposed infants whose parent/caregiver refuses DNA PCR testing ■ Number and percent of parents/caregivers who receive DNA PCR results ■ Number and percent of positive DNA PCR test results ■ Number and percent of HIV-exposed or -infected children started on CTX prophylaxis ■ Number and percent of infants and children enrolled in follow-up HIV care and treatment services ■ Number and percent of infants with an initial negative DNA PCR test result receiving follow-up HIV testing ■ Number and percent of infants for whom final HIV status is determined ■ Number and percent of children lost to follow-up (missing all visits for a period of six months) ■ Number of mothers and other family members receiving HIV testing and counselling services ■ Number and percent of mothers enrolled in care and treatment services
--

Evaluation

Evaluation is assessing the change in indicator measurements resulting from an intervention or programme. An evaluation of the paediatric PITC programme will demonstrate to what extent the programme contributed to changes in indicators. Evaluations should be conducted regularly to look at changes that occur as the PITC programme is implemented and maintained. This will enable programme staff to identify areas of programme strength and weakness and to respond to weaknesses by investigating and correcting problems.

Monitoring and evaluation is not complete or effective if problems identified in the process are not addressed. The process must be continuous, as shown in Figure 8.1 below.

Figure 8.1: Monitoring and evaluation as a continuous process





Trainer Instructions

Slides 18–22

Step 4: Discuss reporting, with a focus on the use of monitoring data to create reports and the use of reports to evaluate services.



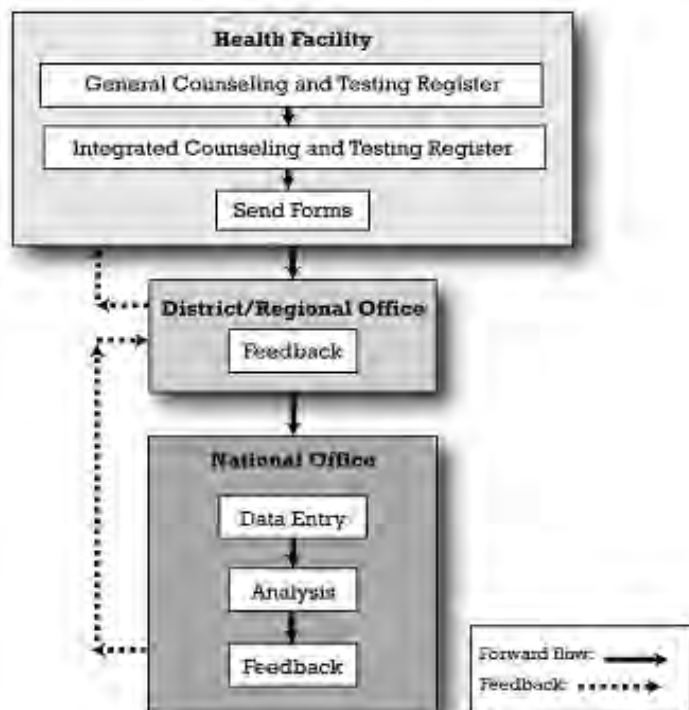
Make These Points

- Monitoring and evaluation is an ongoing, continuous process that informs the planning and implementation of changes to improve the delivery of PITC services.
- Indicators are calculated using the monitoring data that are recorded in registers and summarised on monthly summary forms.
- Monthly data should be summarised to provide feedback to local staff on programme implementation.
- Monitoring reports should be used to examine programme successes, identify problems and what remains to be done to meet programme goals.

Reporting

PITC indicators are calculated using the monitoring data that are recorded in registers and summarised on monthly summary forms. Monthly data should be summarised to provide feedback to local staff on programme implementation. Figure 8.2 depicts the standardised flow of PITC data.

Figure 8.2: Data management flow



The data collection and reporting forms gathered at the facility, district and national levels, have differing schedules for collection, aggregation (putting reports from several places together in one report) and reporting to the next level. For example, the *General Counselling and Testing Register* collects information on the number of new clients tested for HIV as well as the number who test positive; data from all wards in the hospital are aggregated into a single report before sent to the district. The number of new clients (children receiving PITC services) is reported quarterly and annually; the number of children who test positive is reported monthly and annually to the district level. These differing levels of reporting requirements entail a high level of monitoring and follow-up to ensure that reporting standards are followed consistently.

Making certain that all staff are aware of the reasons for accurate reporting and entry of data will help to ensure that programme monitoring reports reflect the most accurate and timely information. This is discussed further in the next session.

Revising

At every level of the system (facility, district and national) monitoring and evaluation reports should prompt decision-making on revisions or changes to key programme components (e.g. standard operating procedures or training) to improve programme implementation. Programme monitoring reports should be used to review whether or not PITC activities took place as planned. If not, the review should prompt a discussion of:

- Programme needs
- Problems that need to be addressed to meet programme goals
- How and when these problems will be addressed

The monitoring and evaluation process is not complete until the workplan is revised in response to the results of the evaluation. Even when targets are met, the workplan should be reconsidered to ensure procedures are in place to support the sustainability of successful programme implementation.



Trainer Instructions

Slides 23–24

Step 5: Conduct Exercise 1: Using paediatric PITC data for decision making.

Exercise 1: Using paediatric PITC data for decision making	
Small group work and large group discussion	
Purpose	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ To review paediatric PITC data and analyse the data for use in programme decision-making
Duration	40 minutes
Advance Preparation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Review and analyse sample monthly paediatric PITC report
Introduction	This will be a chance for participants to review and analyse a sample of paediatric PITC data. Similar, regular analysis can contribute to programme changes and improvement at participants' sites.
Activities	<p>Small Group Work</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Break participants into small groups. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Ask each small group to discuss the sample monthly report below. 2. Give the groups about 20 minutes to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Review the data (e.g. determine the number of children of unknown HIV status). ▪ Calculate missing data (e.g. total number of children less number of children with a documented HIV status). ▪ Report on programme monitoring indicators, shown in Table 8.2, based on the data (e.g. interpret the data). ▪ Discuss major findings (e.g. the most important things learned from this report). ▪ Make recommendations for next steps, based on the data. <p>Small Group Presentations and Large Group Discussion</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 3. Reconvene the large group. 4. Ask each small group to spend about five minutes to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Summarise their discussion ▪ Summarise main findings of their data analysis ▪ Provide an overview of the next steps they would recommend to health facility managers and members of the multidisciplinary team. 5. Encourage the large group to comment and ask questions. 6.
Debriefing	<p>After the exercise, the trainer should ask some of the following questions (if the groups have not brought up these issues already). This will help the participants understand how to critically review monthly data.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ <i>What is the number of children of unknown HIV status?</i>(140 - 37 = 103) ▪ <i>What is the difference between the number of children of unknown status (103) and the number of children (or their</i>

	<p>caregivers) who received pre-test counselling (60)? (103 - 60 = 43).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ <i>What does this tell us about the need for services at this site?</i> (There is a need to determine the reasons that too few caregivers receive pre test counselling and to implement measures to correct this problem.) ■ <i>How many children were not tested?</i> (103 - 50 = 53) ■ <i>Of those children less than 18 months who tested positive with a rapid HIV-antibody test, how many were tested by DNA PCR?</i> (Only 4 out of 22) ■ <i>What does this tell us?</i> (There is a need to ensure DNA PCR testing is conducted according to national guidelines in children who are less than 18 months of age.) ■ <i>Of children tested by DNA PCR, how many caregivers received the test results?</i> (Only 1) ■ <i>What does this tell us?</i> (There is a need to assess procedures and implement measures to strengthen follow-up for children who have been provided with DNA PCR testing.) ■ <i>How many children were referred for follow up?</i> (15 out of 30) ■ <i>What does this tell us?</i> (Systems for follow up must be evaluated and strengthened. Children who are confirmed HIV-infected should be referred immediately for HIV care and treatment. Children who test HIV antibody positive need to be referred for DNA PCR testing. Referral linkages must be established with agencies that provide services needed by caregivers and children. Healthcare workers must be familiar with these referrals and how to make the referrals. Referrals should be tracked. Any healthcare worker who does not refer 100% of her or his clients should be provided with one-to-one support to improve performance.) ■ <i>How many children enrolled for care and treatment?</i> (Only 5 out of the 15 children who were referred enrolled in care.) ■ <i>What does this tell us?</i> (There is a need to assess the problem — possibly by interviewing caregivers — and institute measures to strengthen the systems for referral to care and treatment and for follow-up tracking to ensure caregivers follow through with referrals.) ■ <i>What additional information would be helpful?</i> (No information on targets was provided for this exercise. There is a need to establish targets and to evaluate progress toward meeting the targets).
--	---

Sample (partial) Monthly Paediatric PITC Facility Report

Number of children admitted to ward	140
▪ Status known	37
▪ Status unknown	
Pre-test group counselling documented	60
Rapid HIV testing	50
▪ HIV-positive	30
▪ HIV-negative	20
Of the HIV-positive	30
▪ Less than 18 months of age	22
▪ DNA PCR testing	4
▪ 18 months of age or older	8
▪ Confirmatory antibody testing	7
▪ Number who picked up DNA PCR results	1
▪ Number of referrals to care and treatment	15
▪ Number enrolled in care and treatment	5



Trainer Instructions

Slides 25

Step 6: Allow five minutes for questions and answers on this session.

Session 8.2

Paediatric PITC Data Collection



Total Session Time: 25 minutes



Trainer Instructions

Slide 26

Step 1: Begin by reviewing the Session Objective, listed below.

Session Objectives

After completing this session participants will be able to:

- Describe the data collection tools used for monitoring of paediatric PITC programmes.



Trainer Instructions

Slides 27–38

Step 2: Provide an overview of the paediatric PITC record keeping systems. Highlight that the information from monitoring is only as useful as the quality of the information collected in the data collection tools (forms and registers).

Step 3: Provide an overview of the standardised forms used in Zambia. Note that guidelines dictate the use of national forms and registers so that methods for collecting, monitoring and evaluating data are standardised across all levels of the health system (at primary, secondary and tertiary levels).

When you review each of the seven forms and registers, discuss where and how each form and register is used, as well as the key information recorded on each. Remind participants that they will have a chance to practise filling in these forms and registers as a part of the hospital-based practicum sessions.

Refer participants to Appendices 8-A to 8-D, where they will find examples of four of the data collection tools. Ask if any participants are currently using any of these tools in their work.

Provide a copy of forms and registers for each participant, as needed. It may also be helpful to have samples of forms and registers that have been completed.

When you discuss the last form, the “Paediatric Patient Locator”, introduce the concept of a standardised follow-up system to identify and contact families if appointments are missed. Refer to the Patient Locator Form in Appendix 8-E as a support tool for this purpose.



Make These Points

- Standard national forms and registers are used to collect and document key paediatric PITC information.
- Programme monitoring must protect patient confidentiality. Registers should be kept in locations away from public viewing. Registers should be accessed only by those healthcare workers who need them.
- Ensuring that data are collected and recorded accurately and completely is the responsibility of the staff members that conduct these duties.
- Follow-up systems for patient tracking are recommended to support adherence to the care.

Paediatric PITC Data Collection

A functional and reliable record keeping, monitoring and reporting system — in line with national guidelines — must be in place before implementing a PITC programme. Standard data collection and accurate recording of activities and outcomes are essential. Data collection for paediatric PITC is part of the existing national system and uses existing national HIV testing forms and registers; it is not a separate system with PITC-specific forms.

It is the role of each healthcare worker to ensure that within their scope of duties, monitoring activities are carried out.

Systems for documenting paediatric PITC activities must also maintain client confidentiality; the data collected is not for public view.

Programme monitoring systems must protect the **confidentiality** of the children and families served. Forms and registers should be protected from public view.

Effective monitoring and evaluation requires record keeping that is:

- Accurate
- Reliable
- Standardised
- Recorded following established guidelines

It is the responsibility of all staff members that fill in forms or carry out these services to ensure that data is accurate and complete and that data collection protocols are followed. Attention to quality will help to ensure that needed services are effectively delivered to children and their families.

The following is an overview of the key standardised forms currently in use:

- **Ward or clinic register:** This register is used to record patients admitted (hospital) or scheduled to be seen (outpatient clinic) each day. The register includes information about the child (e.g. name, contact information and date of birth) and simplifies the task of identifying the care (related to testing and counselling) needed at any given visit because the status of testing can be identified quickly. See Figure 8.3.

Figure 8.3: Sample ward or clinic register

Date (a)	Mother			DOB (e)	Sex (f)	Under 5 Card No. (g)	IGA Yes/No (h)	Feeding Method (BF or RF) (i)	Age CTX Started (j)	HIV Test weeks (PCR) (k)	Monthly Parameters to check	Month 1 (l)	Month 2 (m)
	SM No. (b)	AGE (c)	MGA Yes/No (d)										
											Weight		
											CTX Given		
											Weight		
											CTX Given		
											Weight		
											CTX Given		
											Weight		
											CTX Given		

- **General HIV Counselling and Testing Register:** This register is used to record client number, date of visit, patient's name, age and other identifying information. It also includes columns for couple counselling, partner testing, reason for seeking service, date of HIV testing, result, post-test counselled, assessed/referred for ART. There is also space for other notes specific to the child or family; these might be useful as a tool for tracking patient attendance at follow-up testing or other services. The same register is used for adults and children; therefore, there are some data points requested that are not applicable to paediatric testing (e.g. marital status). See Appendix 8-A.
- **Patient-held records:** The patient-held records are the *Mother's Card* and the *Under-Five Card*; both have space designated for HIV testing information. See Appendix 8-B for a copy of the Under-Five Card.
- **Patient medical record:** In addition to the patient-held medical records, each clinic or hospital patient has a facility-based medical

record where testing and counselling information must be recorded. UTH developed a colour-coded labelling system for the medical record so that the nurse counsellors could easily identify those children who had received testing and counselling and those who were awaiting DNA PCR results. During daily rounds, this system made it easy for the counsellors to quickly identify children who had not been tested.

- **Voluntary Counselling and Testing (VCT) Activity Sheet:** Selected columns are taken from the *General HIV Counselling and Testing Register* and then summarised and aggregated for regional and national reporting. See Appendix 8-C.
- **DNA PCR Laboratory Requisition Form:** This form goes with the specimen to the laboratory and is returned to the clinic or ward with the test result. See Appendix 8-D.
- **Paediatric Patient Locator:** This form includes space to record information on the patient's caregivers and home — home address, information about other adults and children in the home, emergency contact information and treatment supporters. See Appendix 8-E.

Tracking Missed Appointments

Health facilities also use an **appointment book** to keep track of upcoming appointments and if appointments were missed. A follow-up system should be developed to contact caregivers when appointments are missed and try to bring the child back into care (e.g. for repeat testing, to receive results of DNA PCR testing or to be evaluated for care and treatment). A follow-up protocol is particularly important for children because HIV progresses rapidly in this population. In settings with a high volume of exposed and infected children (such as tertiary hospitals), specific staff may need to be assigned to this task on a full-time basis to assure testing procedures are completed and that the linkages between testing and subsequent care for the child are maintained.

A follow-up system requires:

- A working appointment system whereby healthcare workers can readily track missed appointments and contact patients who miss appointments to bring them back to the clinic.
- In urban areas, contact may involve the use of cell phones (calling, SMS), while in rural areas, community workers, NGOs, peer educators, family members or friend networks may serve this purpose.
- Contacting families when appointments are missed, either by telephone or by home visit, requires the consent of the caregiver; therefore, a system should be in place to both obtain contact information and to routinely request consent to follow up missed appointments.



Trainer Instructions Slides 39

Step 4: Allow five minutes for questions and answers on this session.

Session 8.3 Quality Assurance and Supportive Supervision



Total Session Time: 40 minutes



Trainer Instructions

Slide 40

Step 1: Begin by reviewing the Session Objectives, listed below.

Session Objective

After completing this session, participants will be able to:

- Describe the purpose of quality assurance (QA).
- Define and describe supportive supervision.



Trainer Instructions

Slides 41–47

Step 2: Ask participants how monitoring and evaluation and QA are related.

Define quality assurance and discuss the relationship between monitoring, evaluation and QA. Emphasise the different but related goals of QA versus monitoring and evaluation and that both are integral to supporting effective, high quality programmes.

Step 3: Ask participants to think about the information they will need to determine if the paediatric PITC programme is going well or if there are problems. Record answers on flip chart. Review one or two key paediatric PITC indicators that are collected at the health facility level (refer to Table 8.2 if needed, or utilise the indicator that was given as an example throughout this module — Number/percent of children offered testing). For each indicator, discuss:

- *What information is needed to measure this indicator?*
- *Where would we get this information?*
- *What QA activities could we use to further evaluate this indicator? (Answer: For “Number/percent of children offered testing” review the Ward/clinic register, *General HIV Counselling and Testing Register*, patient-held records (as available) and patient medical record. Once the percentage of children offered testing is determined, this*

should be compared to the target. Now it is time to look at the quality, accuracy and timeliness of services, by observing healthcare workers undertaking key steps required to offer testing — pre-test counselling and HIV testing. If performance is short of target, also discuss barriers to HIV testing with staff and clients, particularly clients who refused testing.)



Make These Points

- QA is the means by which healthcare worker activities are routinely evaluated to ensure practice is following established guidelines.
- The purpose of QA is to identify problems so that they can be corrected, thereby improving services for children and their families. Like monitoring and evaluation, QA activities include reviews of the accuracy and completeness of programme data. QA activities, however, also look beyond data collection to review the quality of other programme activities, e.g. the accuracy, completeness and quality of pre-and post-test counselling.
- QA should be a routine part of the normal functioning of health facilities on an ongoing basis. When problems are identified, action must be taken to resolve them. This is a continuous process.
- Ensuring that quality services are delivered and that accurate data are kept is the duty of all staff involved in these functions.
- QA activities are most effective when the focus is on providing guidance and mentorship, as well as group problem solving techniques, to correct problems and overcome barriers to high quality services.

Quality Assurance

QA is the means by which activities are routinely evaluated to check that healthcare workers are correctly following the established guidelines and standard operating procedures. The purpose of QA is to identify problems so that they can be corrected, thereby improving services for children and their families.

QA should be a routine part of the normal functioning of health facilities. QA incorporates procedures in which all staff, not solely supervisors, should be involved. On the staff level, for example, healthcare workers need to ensure that the content of pre- and post-test counselling adhere to national guidelines, that universal precautions are followed and that procedures related to patient confidentiality are maintained.

QA incorporates the monitoring and improvement of all activities related to the implementation of paediatric PITC including counselling, testing and

follow-up as well as logistics management, maintenance of the building and data reporting.

QA activities examine and evaluate:

- **General**
 - Patient flow: (smooth, efficient, attentive to the needs of families)
- **Compliance with national guidelines, standard operating procedures and protocols, including**
 - Identification of children who require PITC services
 - Content of pre- and post-test counselling, informed consent
 - Procedures related to confidentiality
 - Adherence to universal precautions
 - HIV testing procedures following appropriate algorithms for the child's age
 - Referrals and linkages to care and treatment; tracking and supporting adherence to follow-up
 - Documentation of all services (ensure data collection is accurate, complete and according to standard procedures)
 - Tracking and follow-up of DNA PCR test results
 - Logistics management: supplies are adequate, not out of date, secure, forecasts are accurate
- **Quality of testing and counselling procedures**
 - Accurate identification of all children who require PITC services according to national guidelines
 - Quality of general counselling skills
 - Pre- and post-test counselling content
 - Protection of confidentiality
 - Informed consent procedure
 - Accurate interpretation of HIV testing algorithms
 - Consistent use of universal precautions
 - Proper collection and accurate interpretation of rapid HIV-antibody test
 - Proper collection of DBS specimens
 - Accurate and complete data collection and forms completion
 - Tracking and follow-up of DNA PCR test results
 - Accurate and complete completion of logs and data collection tools and forms
- **Physical space: adequacy of space and attention to privacy**
- **Linkages to care and treatment**
 - Provision of referrals and linkages to HIV care and treatment for the mother, child and other family members as needed
 - Responsiveness to the priority needs expressed by the family
 - Tracking, follow-up and documentation of missed appointments
 - Meeting national standards for follow-up care and treatment

When conducting QA to evaluate its completeness and accuracy, the data should be assessed against designated standards. Measurements that reflect that the data are of good quality might include the following:

- At least 80% of fields in the programme register are complete.

- At least 80% data within expected range (e.g., date of visit has the correct year, infant date of birth is logical).
- At least 90% of caregivers/clients accept HIV testing after counselling.
- 100% of DBS specimens for DNA PCR that are sent to the lab have either a test result or documentation of reason the test was not done.

QA activities may vary somewhat from one facility to the next based on the type of facility and the facility's experience with paediatric PITC services.

Applying QA Information to Improve Practice

Supervisors may identify (or confirm) shortfalls in individual, team or departmental practice through QA reviews. QA activities are most effective when the focus is on addressing deficiencies by providing staff with guidance and mentorship, as well as group problem solving techniques. The following two cases are examples of problems identified through QA activities and the potential solutions:

- *Problem:* Children in need of PITC services are frequently overlooked. *Intervention:* Observe the services to evaluate the system by which children are identified. Discuss with responsible staff to share observations and ask for their input and suggestions. Identify ways to improve, implement and re-evaluate in two weeks.
- *Problem:* DBS specimens collected by one of the healthcare workers are frequently rejected by the laboratory due to improper collection. *Solution:* Discuss with the healthcare worker. Identify needs (e.g. re-training, mentorship, direct oversight for a specified period of time). Make expectations clear and re-evaluate frequently until resolved.



Trainer Instructions

Slides 48–50

- Step 4:** Ask participants to think about the methods that might be useful for conducting QA activities for a paediatric PITC programme. Write their ideas on a flipchart. Add other ideas, as needed, to provide a full discussion of various methods for conducting QA.



Make These Points

- A variety of methods may be used to conduct QA. Methods may include:
 - Periodic reviews of records
 - Direct observation of PITC-related activities,
 - Interviews with staff and caregivers
- During initial implementation, daily or weekly QA activities allow for immediate follow-up to correct identified problems. As the services

become established, reviews should become a formal part of overall PITC programme monitoring activities at designated intervals (monthly progressing to quarterly reviews).

Methods to Assess Quality

QA is reviewed using a variety of methods — to examining the quality from a number of perspectives. For example: If only forms, client records and registers were used to assess quality, there would be no information on the quality and accuracy of pre- or post-test counselling sessions, the accuracy and timeliness of HIV rapid antibody testing, the quality of DBS specimen collection or quality of supply chain management.

QA activities may include, for example:

- Periodic reviews of records, with staff feedback — the reviewer should check for accuracy, completeness and consistency of entries in the *General HIV Counselling and Testing Register*, patient medical record, *Voluntary Counselling and Testing Activity Sheet* and *DNA PCR Laboratory Requisition Form*.
- Direct observation of procedures such as DBS blood sample collection, the pre-test session, the post-test session, HIV-antibody testing of a blood specimen, interpretation of HIV test results (both DNA PCR and antibody) and correct storage, packing and shipping of DBS specimens.
- Periodic reviews of supply chain management should be conducted to determine if supply forecasts are accurate: Are there too few supplies on hand and frequent stock-outs? Are too many supplies ordered so that HIV test kits are frequently discarded because they are out of date?
- Interviews with staff indirectly or directly involved in the paediatric PITC programme to obtain feedback on specific indicators. A case conference format may be used as a forum to highlight current challenges, systems that are working and those that need improvement and provide a forum for proposing solutions.
- Interviews with caregivers who have received PITC services for a child. Do caregivers feel that adequate information and support was provided in the counselling sessions? Were they clear about what was expected of them, e.g. how and when to follow-up? Was their privacy respected?
- Evaluate physical space, client flow and time concerns through staff and client or caregiver interviews.
- Meet with representatives of services where families are referred. Ask them about client needs, gaps in services and feedback on services.

During initial implementation, daily or weekly QA activities allow for immediate follow-up to correct identified problems. As the services become established, reviews should become a formal part of overall PITC programme monitoring activities at designated intervals (monthly progressing to quarterly reviews).

Although supervisors have the ultimate responsibility for QA, the activities related to QA should be shared with other members of the team.

A well-designed QA programme is one that simplifies the evaluation process and becomes a meaningful, interesting and participatory activity that reduces the burden placed on any one particular staff member.



Trainer Instructions

Slides 51–56

Step 5: Ask participants to describe qualities they believe should be associated with “supportive supervision”. For example, if you were starting a new PITC service within your facility, what could your supervisor do to support you and help you to set up this new service in line with national guidelines? Write responses on flipchart.

Ask participants if they think using supportive supervision would improve performance of healthcare workers who are being supervised. If any participants have experienced or provided supportive supervision, ask them to share their experiences.

Step 6: Give an overview of supportive supervision, discussing the aims of supportive supervision. Then introduce the QA checklist for staff and supervisors (Appendix 8-G).



Make These Points

- An important component of responding effectively to QA findings is to provide supportive supervision. Supportive supervision is an approach to QA that requires collaboration between the supervisor and the staff. The supervisor must work with staff to
 - Establish goals.
 - Monitor performance.
 - Identify and correct problems.
- The goals of supportive supervision are to:
 - Obtain valuable information on programme functioning and quality.
 - Facilitate on-site, participatory problem-solving.

- Improve healthcare worker performance by providing one-to-one support to address an identified deficiency.
- Acknowledge the healthcare worker's contribution to the success of the programme.
- Involve both supervisors and healthcare workers to improve service provision.
- Assure the programme is successful in meeting the needs of HIV-exposed and HIV-infected children and their families.
- Motivate staff.

Supportive Supervision

Quality assurance activities are not complete without assessing the results of the QA review and planning a response. Often weaknesses discovered through QA activities require supervisors to work with staff to address the problems. An important component of responding effectively to QA findings is to provide **supportive supervision**. Supportive supervision requires the supervisor to work with staff to establish goals, monitor performance, identify and correct problems and proactively improve the quality of paediatric PITC services through training, one-to-one support, mentoring and coaching.

QA is most effective when the focus is on providing guidance and mentorship, as well as group problem solving techniques, to assist healthcare workers to correct problems and overcome barriers to a high quality programme.

It is important that supervisors explain to their staff that QA activities are not simply the responsibility of supervisors, but rather that all activities conducted by any staff member that aims to improve services is a part of the continuous QA process.

Supportive supervision aims to:

- Obtain valuable information on programme functioning and quality.
- Improve healthcare worker performance by providing one-to-one support to address an identified deficiency.
- Acknowledge good practices by providing positive feedback and noting contributions to the success of the programme.
- Involve both supervisors and healthcare workers to improve service provision (it is not the sole responsibility of the supervisor). Healthcare workers can support each other by mentoring their peers. For example the healthcare worker skilled at taking DBS specimens might tutor peers who are just learning this skill. Another healthcare worker who is experienced in completing clinic registers can show others how to ensure all columns are filled in correctly.
- Facilitate on-site, participatory problem-solving. Healthcare workers should be encouraged to become comfortable actively participating with their supervisors to address weaknesses.

- Assure the programme is successful in meeting the needs of HIV-exposed and HIV-infected children and their families.
- Motivate staff.

- Supportive supervision must be established as quickly as possible to prevent poor practises from becoming routine.

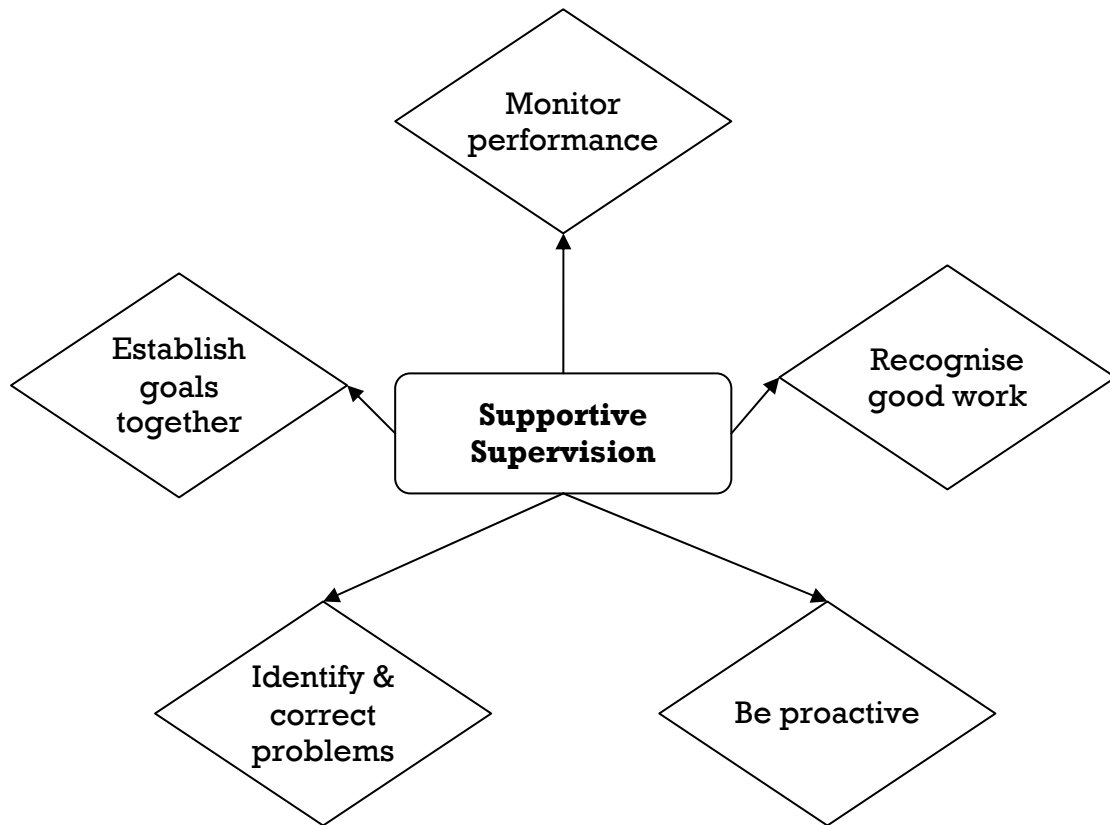
Figure 8.4 illustrates the concept of supportive supervision.

QA Checklist

See Appendix 8-F for the *Supportive Supervision and Motivation* form and Appendix 8-G for the *Quality Assurance Checklist for Staff and Supervisors*. These forms are a resource intended for supervisors and healthcare workers providing paediatric PITC services:

- Healthcare workers can use the checklist as a resource to assist them in understanding what is expected.
- Healthcare workers and supervisors can use the checklist as a guide when they are mentoring, training or otherwise supporting staff members.
- Healthcare workers and supervisors can use the checklist as a guide to ensure that paediatric PITC processes and protocols are followed.
- The checklist can also be used to set goals and expectations, improve worker performance and facilitate participatory problem solving.

Figure 8.4: Supportive supervision



The checklist includes questions that pertain to a variety of healthcare worker roles — including counsellors, data management staff and laboratory personnel — that can be answered only after direct observation of the employee in that role. In addition to evaluating proficiency, direct observation also provides supervisors with opportunity to assess staff attitude, particularly attitude towards clients and work.

Motivation for staff is an important factor contributing to the smooth operation of the PITC programme. During supportive supervision, the following actions may help keep the morale of staff high and keep them motivated:

- Praise and recognise healthcare workers for work that is done well.
- Involve healthcare workers in the planning process; encourage healthcare workers to set targets and develop performance monitoring indicators.
- Solicit and act on feedback received from healthcare workers.



Trainer Instructions
Slides 57–60

Step 7: Allow five minutes for questions and answers on this session.

Step 8: Summarise this module by reviewing the key points in the slides and box below.



Module 8: Key Points

- Monitoring and evaluation is a process by which data related to the delivery of PITC services is collected and evaluated in a standard way at all health facilities. This data is used to monitor progress in the implementation and scale-up of PITC services from the facility perspective, but also at the district and national levels.
- Monitoring and evaluation is an ongoing, continuous process that informs the planning and implementation of changes to improve the delivery of PITC services.
- Ensuring that data are collected and recorded accurately and completely is the responsibility of the staff members that conduct these duties. Healthcare workers also actively collaborate in QA activities.
- QA is similar to monitoring and evaluation because it reviews the accuracy and completeness of programme data. QA activities, however, also look beyond data collection to review the quality of programme activities, e.g. the accuracy, completeness and quality of pre- and post-test counselling.
- Like monitoring and evaluation, QA is a continuous process. During initial implementation, daily or weekly QA activities allow for immediate follow-up to correct identified problems; as the programme is fully established, QA can be performed at regular intervals.
- QA activities are most effective when the focus is improving services by supportive supervision, e.g. providing guidance and mentorship, as well as group problem solving techniques to correct problems and overcome barriers to high quality services.

Appendix 8-A General HIV Counselling and Testing Register

Client Number	Date of Visit (dd/mm/yyyy)	Client Details				Partner Contacted? Y/N	Reason for Service	Pre-test Counselling and Testing				Post-test Services			Remarks							
		Client Name (Surname, First Name)	Age	Marital Status	Sex			Address House # & Town/Village, Chief and/or District	Came as a Partner or Energy	Took HIV Test on Visit	Test Result	Collected Results on Visit	Post-test Counselled Date	Assessed for ART Date		Referred for ART Date						
01	01/01/2011																					
02	02/02/2012																					
03	03/03/2013																					
04	04/04/2014																					
05	05/05/2015																					
06	06/06/2016																					
07	07/07/2017																					
08	08/08/2018																					
09	09/09/2019																					
10	10/10/2020																					
11	11/11/2021																					
12	12/12/2022																					
13	13/13/2023																					
14	14/14/2024																					
15	15/15/2025																					

Appendix 8-B Under-Five Card

CHILDREN'S CLINIC CARD

CHILD'S PARTICULARS

Name of Health Facility

Child's No.

Child's Name Boy/Girl

Mother's or Guardian's Name NRC no.

Father's or Guardian's Name NRC no.

Date first seen Date of Birth Birth sex

Place of Birth

Where the family lives: address

Tick if the child has:

Birth weight less than 2.5kg

Birth defect(s)

Born within 2 years of last delivery

Fully protected against Tetanus at birth

Wormer dose

Number of brothers and sisters

Twin child

Any other reason for special attention

DEWORMING

For children aged 11 months and above, 1200mg

Date	Medication	Dose

IMMUNISATION RECORD

IMMUNISATION against Tuberculosis (TB)

BCG (at birth) Date: _____

no. or after 10 weeks, repeat dose. (Always epidemiology only) Date: _____

IMMUNISATION against Polio (OPV), Diphtheria, Whooping Cough, Tetanus, Hib, Hepatitis B, Meningitis, Pneumococcal (Pneumo-Hib & Shingles)

PMTCT

CE MSU CNE

Test by:

DATE	PCR	R	NR	I

IGA

PMTCT

CE MSU CNE

Test by:

DATE	PCR	R	NR	I

IGA

Follow up time

6 Weeks	2 Months	3M	4M	5M	6M	7M

Follow up time

8W	9M	10M	12M	15M	18M	24M

Cotrimoxazole

Date baby referred for ART: _____

Date initiated on ART: _____

Age at initiation of ART: _____

MONITORING OF INFANT AND YOUNG CHILD FEEDING

Follow up time	Birth	6 Days	6W	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M	6M
Infant feeding code									
Follow up time									
Infant feeding code									

Feeding Code:

- 1) Exclusive breast feeding (in the first 6 months, breast-feeding only, no water, no other fluids except medicines indicated by medical personnel)
- 2) Exclusive Alternative Infant Formula
- 3) Animal Milk
- 4) Mixed feeding (breast milk and other foods)
- 5) Continued breast feeding after six months in addition to other foods
- 6) Milk based food after six months in addition to other foods
- 7) Other, specify _____

CHILD FEEDING

	3M	4M	5M	6M

IMPORTANT:

All infants and young children should be breastfed exclusively for the first six months of life and continue to breastfeed up to two years and beyond with adequate complementary feeding from six months of age where medically indicated.

Assess him to HIV positive mothers have special feeding needs. Discuss with a health worker.

IF THE CHILD HAS DIARRHOEA

- If the child is still on breast milk, continue breast feeding.
- After each loose stool, do the following:
 - Give ORS
 - Give zinc
 - Continue to feed the child.

Mix 20mls of each of ORS in 1 litre of boiled/cooled water. Go immediately to the nearest Health Centre.

PNEUMONIA


If a child has a cough with:

- Fast breathing
- Difficulties in breathing
- Difficulties in breast feeding

The child may have Pneumonia. Go immediately to the nearest Health Centre.

DISCUSS

- Breastfeeding
- Complementary feeding
- Immunisation
- Nutrition supplementation
- Hygiene
- Feeding during and after illness
- Antimicrobial therapy
- Treatment of diarrhea
- Hydration
- Hygiene



Appendix 8-D DNA PCR Laboratory Requisition Form

White Copy and Blue Copy – to the referral laboratory
Pink Copy – to be retained by the requesting site



DNA PCR Test - Laboratory Requisition Form

Province _____ District _____

Facility _____ Ward _____

Patient ID No. _____ Patient Name _____ Age _____ Sex _____

Mother's ID No. _____ Patient Caretaker's Phone No. _____

Patient Caretaker's Address _____

Requesting Officer _____

Referral Lab for Sample (Tick one) Arthur Davison Kalingalinga UTH Other _____

Please also provide the information requested below (Tick as appropriate)

1	Child's HIV Rapid Test Result	<input type="checkbox"/> Reactive	<input type="checkbox"/> Non Reactive	<input type="checkbox"/> Indeterminate	<input type="checkbox"/> Unknown
	Mother's HIV Status	<input type="checkbox"/> Positive	<input type="checkbox"/> Negative	<input type="checkbox"/> Unknown	
2	PMTCT Intervention Given to Mother	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes	<input type="checkbox"/> No		
3	PMTCT Intervention Given to Child	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes	<input type="checkbox"/> No		
4	Infant Still Breastfeeding	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes	<input type="checkbox"/> No	If no, weeks since cessation _____	<input type="checkbox"/> Never breastfed
5	PCR Test Performed on Child Before	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes	<input type="checkbox"/> No	If yes, date PCR test done _____	

Sample Collected By:

Name _____ Designation _____

Signature _____ Date Collected ____ / ____ / ____

FOR LABORATORY USE ONLY

Patient Laboratory No. _____ Date Test Received at Lab ____ / ____ / ____

Date Test Performed ____ / ____ / ____

PCR LABORATORY RESULTS (Tick as appropriate) Detected Not Detected Sample Rejected

Signed _____ Counter Signed _____

Comments (including reason for rejection, if applicable) _____

Note: The form must be completely filled in and data on this form must tally with that on the DBS sample card in order for the sample to be worked on.

Appendix 8-E Paediatric Patient Locator



PAEDIATRIC PATIENT LOCATOR

Date / /

Day Month Year

Patient ID - - -

District Facility Serial no.

Facility ID (if different) - -

Patient Last Name _____ Patient First Name _____ Clinic code - -

TYPE OF ENTRY New Patient Transfer in, specify facility: _____ Update information only
For transfer patient with records, complete only parts that have changed; if transfer patient does not have records, treat as a new patient

BACKGROUND Name child goes by: _____ Mother's surname before marriage (if married): _____

Place of birth: _____ Mother's name: _____ Father's name: _____

Chief at birth: _____ Is mother living? Yes No Is father living? Yes No

Guardian's education level: None Highest grade (1-12): _____ College/University _____

Guardian's occupation: _____ Guardian's employer: _____ Guardian's workplace: _____

Estimated household income per month: < 50,000 50,000-99,999 100,000-199,999 200,000-499,999 > 500,000

ADDRESS Current Permanent Supporter Neighbor Parent Provider Current Permanent Supporter Neighbor Parent Provider

House number/plot number _____ Street name _____ Township/compound _____ Village _____ Chief _____ Telephone _____

House number/plot number _____ Street name _____ Township/compound _____ Village _____ Chief _____ Telephone _____

HOUSEHOLD Adults _____ Other Children _____

EMERGENCY CONTACT

Name _____

Relation to patient _____

House number/plot number _____

Street name _____

Township/compound _____

Village _____

Chief _____

Telephone _____

TREATMENT SUPPORTERS Lives in same household? Y/N

Name	Relation to patient	Phone/contact info

REMEMBER TO DRAW MAP ON SECOND SHEET OF FORM

PAGE 1 OF 2 PAEDIATRIC PATIENT LOCATOR v3.2.2 Clerk initial _____ Staff ID _____ Staff signature _____

Appendix 8-F Supportive Supervision and Motivation

Supportive supervision helps to assure the programme is successful by:

- Improving worker performance
- Obtaining valuable information on programme functioning
- Facilitating on-site, participatory problem-solving

Specific factors in supervision and quality assurance:

- Adherence to protocols
- Systems for managing stocks of supplies and drugs
- Record keeping — accuracy of recording, timeliness, interpretation
- Content and quality of counselling and testing procedures
- Linkages to care and treatment services

Motivation for staff is an important factor in success:

- Identify and support career development and advancement opportunities.
- Involve healthcare workers in the planning process; act on feedback from staff at all levels.
- Praise and recognise healthcare workers who have earned it through hard work.

Comparison of traditional and supportive supervision		
Action	Traditional supervision	Supportive supervision
What happens during supervision encounters	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Inspection of facility ▪ Review of records and supplies ▪ Supervisor makes most of the decisions ▪ Reactive problem-solving by supervisor ▪ Little feedback or discussion of supervisor observations 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Observation of performance and comparison to standards ▪ Provision of corrective and supportive feedback ▪ Discussion with clients ▪ Provision of technical updates and guidelines ▪ On-site training ▪ Use of data and client input to identify opportunities for improvement ▪ Joint problem solving
What happens after supervision encounters	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ No or irregular follow-up ▪ Little documentation ▪ Lack of continuity lack of support for performance improvement 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Actions and decisions recorded ▪ Ongoing monitoring of weak areas and improvements ▪ Follow-up of issues identified at previous visits

Appendix 8-G Quality Assurance Checklist for Staff and Supervisors

PAEDIATRIC PROVIDER INITIATED TESTING AND COUNSELLING

This checklist is offered as an aid to support supervision and quality assurance for paediatric PITC services. Through observation, interviews and reviews of PITC data, the quality of PITC services and the accuracy of data can be routinely monitored. Ultimately, the goals are to:

- Obtain valuable information on programme functioning and quality.
- Facilitate participatory problem solving.
- Assure the programme successfully meets the needs of children and their families.
- Improve worker performance and the quality of PITC services by providing technical support and acknowledging healthcare workers' contribution to the success of the program.

When paediatric PITC services are initially implemented, routine quality assurance checks should be made bi-weekly and supervisory visits should occur monthly for at least six months. When PITC services are firmly in place and running smoothly, monthly quality assurance checks and quarterly supervision should be adequate.

Instructions

Through direct observation, interviews and/or review of data:

- Answer each question with a “yes” or “no”. (Note: It may not be possible or necessary to complete every section of this tool every time an evaluation occurs.)
- Assign one point for each “yes” response, and zero points for each “no” response.
- Tally the number of points by section and compare with the total number of points possible for that section.
- Acknowledge the team's strengths.
- Discuss areas for improvement (if any) and formulate a plan to correct problems.
- If no problems were identified, continue routine QA activities.
- If problems were identified, re-evaluate after taking corrective action.
 - Acknowledge improvements (if any).
 - Re-evaluate corrective action plan if no improvements are seen.

Name of Health Facility:	Date of Supervision	Name of Supervisor

1. General Information			
Questions	Yes-1	No-0	Comments
<p>Are reference materials on site and accessible, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ PITC Paediatric Guidelines ■ Rapid Test Instructions ■ Counselling Cue cards ■ DBS instructions 			
<p>Are staff members who are not directly involved in delivery of paediatric PITC services aware of the rationale for these services? Note any circumstances that could inform plans for future training. Briefly interview representative staff and stakeholders, such as:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Nurse and/or midwife ■ Community health worker ■ Clinical officer ■ Pharmacist ■ Laboratory technician <p>The number of staff represented will vary depending on the size and type of facility.</p>			
<p>Total number of points this section: _____</p> <p>Total number of points possible: <u>2</u></p>			

2. Questions on Staffing and Training			
Questions	Yes-1	No-0	Comments
Was an orientation to introduce and discuss paediatric PITC held?			
Has a specific paediatric PITC coordinator or director been identified?			
Have the staff who will implement paediatric PITC been trained in specific skills, e.g., DBS testing, heel stick, pre- and post-test counselling, etc?			
Have counsellors who will conduct pre- and post-testing been identified?			
If lay counsellors are being used at the facility, is there clarity regarding their specific duties and their supervision?			
Are there sufficient healthcare workers for paediatric PITC services?			
Is there a designated person for data reporting and collection, or if not, are staff who collect data trained to fill out forms?			
Total number of points this section: _____			
Total number of points possible: <u>7</u>			

3. Physical Facility			
Questions	Yes-1	No-0	Comments
Are supplies kept in a secure location?			
Is there adequate space for testing and counselling?			

3. Physical Facility			
Questions	Yes-1	No-0	Comments
Does the space allow for privacy for individual counselling?			
Is there a table available to conduct tests?			
Is there sufficient equipment to conduct activities, e.g., beds, chairs for waiting room, etc.			
Are the rooms, equipment and physical space kept clean?			
Is there a system at the testing location for disposing of hazardous materials (e.g., sharps containers) and rubbish?			
Total number of points this section: _____			
Total number of points possible: <u>7</u>			

4. Supplies			
Questions	Yes-1	No-0	Comments/Observations
Were sufficient supplies available to ensure universal precautions are followed, e.g. gloves, etc?			
Were there sufficient supplies of other needed materials, e.g., sterile gauze pads, timers, etc?			
Were there sufficient numbers of antibody test kits (not out of date) available?			
Were there sufficient numbers of DBS test kits (not out of date) available?			

4. Supplies			
Questions	Yes-1	No-0	Comments/Observations
Were expired supplies kept separate from those that are to be used?			
Is a system in place to ensure that stock-outs do not occur?			
Are there working systems to manage receiving supplies and transport of DBS samples to central labs for testing?			
Total number of points this section: _____ Total number of points possible: <u>1</u>			

5. Observation of Testing and Counselling			
5a. Pre-Test Information Session			
Questions	Yes-1	No-0	Comments/Observations
Did the counsellor introduce herself and establish rapport?			
Did the counsellor attempt to assess the baseline level of knowledge of the group?			
Did the counsellor explain that paediatric PITC is routine in Zambia?			
Were the benefits of testing (especially for children) and the availability of care and treatment reviewed?			
Was confidentiality discussed?			
Was the testing procedure explained?			

5. Observation of Testing and Counselling			
5a. Pre-Test Information Session			
Questions	Yes-1	No-0	Comments/Observations
Was an overview of the meaning of test results provided, including noting the potential need for further testing of children who are <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ less than four weeks of age ▪ breastfed within the last three months ▪ less than 18 months of age 			
Did the counsellor explain the relationship between a child's HIV status and the status of the mother?			
Was the right to refuse testing explained in an unbiased way?			
Did the counsellor close the session by asking if there were any more questions and offer to answer privately if preferred?			
Did the counsellor use facilitation and listening and learning skills appropriately, e.g., asking open-ended questions, maintaining a non-judgmental attitude, showing empathy?			
For older children and adolescents: If the caregiver deems the child to be of appropriate age and maturity to discuss HIV testing, was an individual session provided for the child?			
Total number of points this section: _____ Total number of points possible: 12			

5b. Rapid HIV–Antibody Testing Procedures			
Questions	Yes-1	No-0	Comments/Observations
Did the counsellor use the correct HIV test (in accordance with the testing algorithms)?			
Was the blood sample collected appropriately? (Heel stick for children 9kg or under; toe if over 9kg; finger prick for those over two years)			
Was the puncture site warmed and sterilised?			
Was the pipette used appropriately to draw the blood?			
Was the blood applied appropriately to the test strip?			
Were the caregiver and child given instructions and support?			
Were universal precautions used consistently?			
Was rapid HIV-antibody testing conducted according to instructions?			
Were the caregiver and child told when to expect test results, where to wait and to expect further counselling?			
Were the results correctly interpreted by the counsellor?			
Total number of points this section: _____			
Total number of points possible: <u>10</u>			

5c. DBS Collection for DNA PCR Testing Procedures			
Questions	Yes-1	No-0	Comments/Observations
Was DBS collection the correct test at the correct time (in accordance with algorithm)?			
Was the blood sample collected appropriately? (Heel stick for children 9kg or under; toe if over 9kg)			
Was the puncture site warmed and sterilised?			
Was the blood applied appropriately to the filter paper?			
Were the caregiver and child given instructions and support?			
Were universal precautions used consistently?			
Was the specimen labelled correctly before starting the DBS collection?			
Was the specimen air dried for at least three hours?			
Was glassine paper inserted between dried filter paper cards and desiccant packets inserted appropriately?			
Was the DNA PCR laboratory request properly completed and placed with the specimen?			
Were the caregiver and child told when to expect test results, when to return and what to expect upon return?			
Have all DBS specimens in the past month been accepted by the laboratory?			

5c. DBS Collection for DNA PCR Testing Procedures			
Total number of points this section: _____			
Total number of points possible: <u>12</u>			

5d. Post-test counselling			
Questions	Yes-1	No -0	Comments
Did the counsellor introduce herself and establish rapport?			
Were the test results delivered clearly, privately and without any attached judgment?			
Was follow-up care for child and family discussed, e.g., need for further testing, what to do if child is sick?			
Was the caregiver's understanding of the results of the test as well as understanding of follow-up plan assessed?			
Were questions about the need or presence of emotional support for the caregiver and family asked?			
Did the counsellor use facilitation and listening and learning skills appropriately, e.g., asking open-ended questions, maintaining a non-judgemental attitude, showing empathy?			
Were appropriate referrals made?			
Total number of points this section: _____			
Total number of points possible: <u>7</u>			

5d. Post-test counselling			
For infants less than 18 months — positive			
Questions	Yes-1	No -0	Comments
If the rapid antibody test is positive, were caregivers given information on DNA PCR testing?			
Were caregivers instructed on how to access cotrimoxazole and how it should be given until the results of the DNA PCR testing come back?			
Was safe infant/child feeding discussed? <input type="checkbox"/> If less than 6 months, was exclusive breastfeeding discussed? <input type="checkbox"/> If approaching six months (or older than six months), was complementary feeding discussed? <input type="checkbox"/> If older than six months was “adequate diet” discussed?			
Was the mother’s HIV status discussed? Was the mother given accurate information on her HIV status and the need for and availability of follow-up care and treatment?			
Was an evaluation done to determine other family members who need HIV testing and counselling?			
Were caregivers guided through the next steps of service, including acquiring cotrimoxazole, returning for DNA PCR results, care for mother and other family members, etc?			

5d. Post-test counselling			
For infants less than 18 months — positive			
Questions	Yes-1	No -0	Comments
Did the counsellor explore the caregiver’s understanding of the results and follow-up care?			
Did the counsellor use facilitation and listening and learning skills appropriately, e.g., asking open-ended questions, maintaining a non-judgmental attitude, showing empathy?			
Total number of points this section: _____ Total number of points possible: <u>8</u>			

5d. Post-test counselling			
For children 18 months or older and under 16 years of age — positive			
Questions	Yes-1	No-0	Comments
Are children allowed in the post-test counselling session if parents deem them of appropriate age and maturity level?			
Were caregivers instructed on how to access cotrimoxazole and how it should be given?			
Was safe child feeding discussed? <input type="checkbox"/> Was “adequate diet” discussed? <input type="checkbox"/> If approaching 24 months, was weaning and continuing need for animal-source milk discussed?			
Are parents guided through the next steps of service, including acquiring medicines?			

5d. Post-test counselling			
For children 18 months or older and under 16 years of age — positive			
Questions	Yes-1	No-0	Comments
Are children referred to paediatric and psychiatric services, as needed?			
Was the mother's HIV status discussed? Was the mother given accurate information on her HIV status and the need for and availability of follow-up care and treatment?			
Was an evaluation done to determine other family members who need HIV testing and counselling?			
Are families encouraged to return to the clinic for follow-up and further referrals?			
Did the counsellor use facilitation and listening and learning skills appropriately, e.g., asking open-ended questions, maintaining a non-judgmental attitude, showing empathy?			
Total number of points this section: _____			
Total number of points possible: <u>9</u>			

5d. Post-test counselling			
For infants less than 18 months — negative			
Questions	Yes-1	No-0	Comments
If the DNA PCR test comes back negative, are recommendations made regarding infant/young child feeding practices?			

5d. Post-test counselling			
For infants less than 18 months — negative			
Questions	Yes-1	No-0	Comments
Are caregivers encouraged to come back for further testing if the child is <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ less than four weeks of age ▪ breastfed within the last three months ▪ less than 18 months of age 			

5d. Post-test counselling			
For children 18 months or older and under 16 — negative			
Questions	Yes-1	No-0	Comments
Are parents encouraged to teach their children basic health practises that can decrease the risk of getting HIV?			
Are parents encouraged to come back for further testing if the child is still breastfeeding?			
Total number of points this section: _____			
Total number of points possible: <u>4</u>			

6. Referral Linkages and Systems			
Questions	Yes-1	No-0	Comments
Are linkages established that include referral mechanisms, appointment tracking and follow-up with: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Paediatric HIV-related treatment? ▪ Adult HIV-related treatment? ▪ Reproductive health and family planning services? ▪ Under-Five clinic/immunisation services? ▪ Community based services? 			
Are healthcare workers knowledgeable about how to make referrals and know of the potential places where caregivers and children can be referred?			
Is there a tracking and communication system in place for attendance at appointments for: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ DNA PCR results? ▪ For repeat testing and counselling (e.g. three months post cessation of breastfeeding)? ▪ For testing of partner(s) and sibling(s)? 			
Does the facility have a working linkage with the laboratory for DNA PCR testing?			
Are DNA PCR results received within 2-4 weeks?			
Total number of points this section: _____ Total number of points possible: <u>5</u>			

7. Data Collection and Use			
Questions	Yes-1	No-0	Comments
Was the testing register, laboratory specimen log, Under-Five card, Mother's card, and medical record correctly completed?			
Is the weekly/monthly report for PITC correctly completed?			
Does the site conduct and document QA activities?			
Have all monthly monitoring forms been submitted in the past year?			
Total number of points this section: _____			
Total number of points possible: <u>4</u>			

Client-Exit Interview (the caregivers are the clients)			
Questions	Yes-1	No-0	Comments
Did you feel that you were respected by the counsellor, regardless of your age or HIV status?			
Was the facility clean and comfortable?			
Did the counsellor explain testing your child for HIV in a way that you understood?			
Did the counsellor explain that you have a right to refuse HIV testing for your child?			
Were you provided with a private, confidential space for your post-test counselling?			
Did you understand what the test results mean?			
Did you understand what the next steps are for you and your child?			
Did you feel comfortable enough with the counsellor to discuss any concerns about your or your child's health status?			
Did you get referrals from the healthcare worker?			
Do you plan to follow up on the referrals, e.g., going to get care and treatment for your child and/or yourself?			

Client-Exit Interview (the caregivers are the clients)			
Questions	Yes-1	No-0	Comments
Did you feel that you were given just the right amount of information?			
Do you have any suggestions for improvement?			
Total number of points this section: _____ Total number of points possible: <u>12</u>			

References and Resources

ICAP Infant Diagnosis Manual, Diagnosis of HIV Infection in Infants: A Comprehensive Implementation and Clinical Manual. (2007).
<http://www.columbia-icap.org/resources/peds/files/Infantdx050307.pdf>.

Republic of Zambia Ministry of Health. (2009). National Guidelines for Paediatric Provider-initiated HIV Testing and Counselling.

Module 9 Paediatric PITC Action Planning and Implementation



Total Module Time: 60 minutes (1 hour)

Learning Objective

After completing this module, participants will be able to:

- List the key steps and considerations when initiating paediatric PITC.

Methodologies



- Interactive trainer presentation
- Group discussion

Materials Needed



- Flip chart
- Markers
- Tape or Bostik
- Extra copies of Appendix 9-A — the Paediatric PITC Action Planning and Implementation Template
- The trainer should have the slide set for Module 9.
- Participants should have their Participant Manuals. The Participant Manual contains background technical content.

References and Resources



- National Guidelines for Paediatric Provider-initiated HIV Testing and Counselling

Advance Preparation



- Review Appendix 9-A in this module ahead of time and make extra photocopies of the implementation and action planning template.

Session 9.1: Introduction to Paediatric PITC Action Planning and Implementation

Activity/Method	Time
Interactive trainer presentation (Slides 1–26)	55 minutes
Questions and answers	5 minutes
Total Session Time	60 minutes

Session 9.1 Introduction to Paediatric PITC Action Planning and Implementation (Pre-practicum)



Total Session Time: 60 minutes



Trainer Instructions

Slides 1–2

Step 1: Begin by reviewing the Module 9 Learning Objective (page 9-1) and Session Objective, listed below.

Session Objective

After completing this session, participants will be able to:

- List the key steps and considerations when initiating paediatric PITC.



Trainer Instructions

Slides 3–4

Step 2: Remind participants that this training is only the first step in implementing paediatric PITC. Explain that this module is an overview of action and implementation planning. Participants will create an action plan after the practicum when they have a better sense of how the components of paediatric PITC implementation fit together.

During the hospital-based practicum session, participants should think about how paediatric PITC knowledge and skills will be applied in their own health facilities. After the practicum, participants will use this knowledge when they work in small groups to create site-specific implementation and action plans to initiate/expand paediatric PITC services.

Step 3: Present the key steps to set up and implement paediatric PITC. Ask participants to imagine that, for the duration of this session (so for the next hour or so), that **THEY** are the director at a site that is establishing a new paediatric PITC service. Participants should respond to the questions as if they were responsible for planning this new and important service. Start by asking: *What do you think will be needed to set up YOUR new paediatric PITC service?*

Wait for participants to respond, remind them that they are in charge — they are the director given the responsibility of a new service: *Today is your first day in your new job, what are you going to do?*

Ask key questions to encourage them to mention most of the key steps in Figure 9.1 and resources listed in Table 9.1.

Encourage participants to think about how they can address each of these at their own site after returning from the training. Refer participants to Appendix 9-A, which they will complete in teams after the practicum.



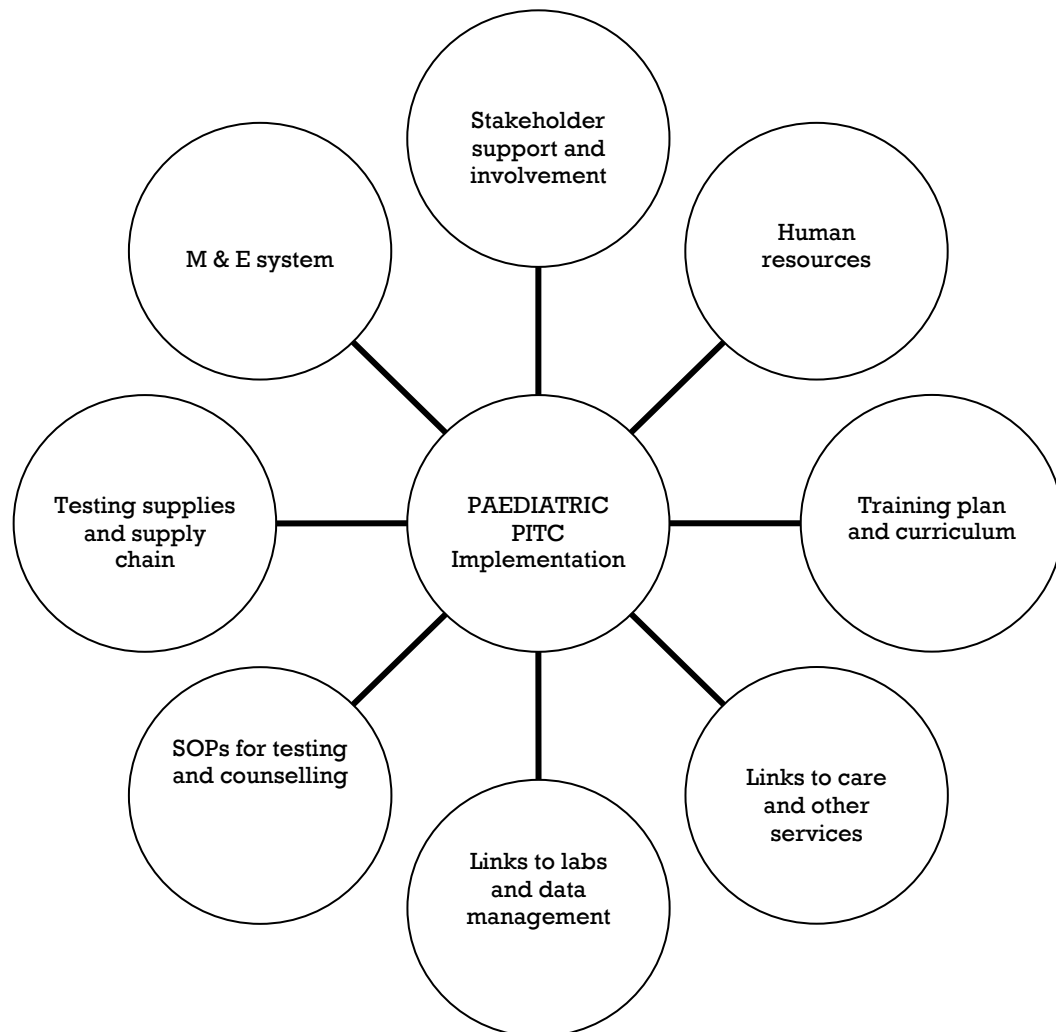
Make These Points

- Setting up a new service — whether starting a new service where none exists or expanding an existing service — takes time, effort and resources.
- While much of the material may be directed to supervisors, facility staff members also have a role to play in implementation plans.

Key Steps to Set Up and Implement Paediatric PITC

Setting up a new service — whether starting a new service where none exists or expanding an existing service — takes time, effort and resources. To start, strategic planning will require an assessment of current and required infrastructure, site readiness, staff selection, referral networks and the phasing and time frame for implementation. Figure 9.1 details eight of the major elements crucial to effective implementation.

Figure 9.1: Key steps for set-up and implementation of paediatric PITC



Protocols for testing and counselling, informed consent and integration with other services for post-test care and support must be in place, along with integrated systems for data collection, monitoring and evaluation and quality assurance related to standard operating procedures (SOPs). Sites or facilities without the required resources must develop site-specific plans for developing or acquiring them.

Table 9.1: Required resources for implementation of paediatric PITC in health facilities

- Stakeholder support and involvement
 - Healthcare facility staff (managers and workers) participation and support
 - Community participation and support
- Human resources, training, supervision and mentoring
- Training plan and curriculum, including plans for ongoing and refresher training
- Material supplies and resources for testing and a reliable supply chain
- Sufficient space to ensure safe working conditions and confidentiality for caregivers, children and their families
- SOPs for testing and counselling procedures (See Modules 5 and 6)
- Formal linkages to other services for post-test support, care and treatment
- Linkages to lab services, data management, quality assurance and other service components
- Monitoring and evaluation systems, plan and tools



Trainer Instructions

Slides 5–6

Step 4:

Discuss community commitment and its importance when setting up any service that serves the community. Initiate the discussion by asking participants: *What would you do if you were the director responsible for planning a new PITC service and on your way into work, five people from a well-respected local church stopped you and told you that what you are doing is wrong and that you should stop?*

(Response should focus on better communication with these stakeholders — including them in the planning, addressing their concerns, providing them with facts to counter any misconceptions.)



Make These Points

- It is important to involve stakeholders — through formal and informal mechanisms — in the planning and implementation of paediatric PITC services.

Stakeholder Support and Involvement

What is community commitment?

Community commitment refers to the endorsement, active involvement and leadership by a variety of stakeholders — that is, people who live in the community or will otherwise be affected by the healthcare service under consideration, such as paediatric HIV testing and counselling.

Why is community commitment important?

- Stakeholders have valuable information and ideas and can make important contributions to planning and implementation.
- Establishing buy-in from stakeholders will promote and improve the implementation of PITC services.
- Sometimes stakeholders are unaware of the benefits of HIV testing for children, have misconceptions about the programme or have serious concerns about stigma and discrimination. Influential stakeholders can block implementation of a new service, especially if the services are perceived as being imposed on the community rather than developed collaboratively. It is important that these stakeholders are involved in the plan, that their reservations are addressed and that they see the benefits of the new service. Their support is instrumental to the program's success.

How do you keep stakeholders involved?

- When planning a new service, meet with stakeholders — not only those who will support the service but also those who may not support it. Discuss your plan with the stakeholders, revise your plan to address their wishes and reservations.
- Inform stakeholders of the benefits of the new service.
- If stigma might be an issue, ask stakeholders to suggest strategies for addressing stigma.
- Keep community stakeholders informed of the progress of PITC service implementation.
- Once the service is implemented, solicit feedback from stakeholders on their experiences with the programme as well as any feedback they have received from the community.

Facilities have varying mechanisms for communication with stakeholders in the community. Some have formal community advisory boards; others have less formal but important ties through community workers, community Integrated Management of Childhood Illnesses (IMCI) programmes and non-governmental or faith-based organisations.



Trainer Instructions

Slides 7–9

Step 5:

Introduce the content on staff participation and support by asking: *What is the most important resource in any healthcare service?* (Response: human resources, i.e. the staff). Without staff, a PITC service — or any other healthcare service — cannot exist.)

Ask participants: *If you are establishing your paediatric PITC service (remember, you are still the director) within an existing service, what do you have to think about to ensure you have the right staffing to launch a quality service?*



Make These Points

- When developing a new service, conduct an assessment of staffing needs — what staff are needed to do the job? What training do they need?
- Facility supervisors and staff should ensure that the required human resources for effective implementation of PITC services are in place.

Human Resources: Participation and Support

As with any healthcare services, the **human** resources are the most critical component of effective, high quality paediatric PITC services. Conduct an assessment to determine:

- Staffing needs: staffing requirements will vary depending on the expected volume of clients and the workload of existing staff
- Staff turnover rates
- Staff capacity
- Staff willingness to initiate PITC services, particularly if paediatric PITC will be integrated with an established service
- Current roles and responsibilities of each member of staff — at all levels whether managerial, administrative or clinical

A commitment is required at all levels to develop and support staff by providing training, supervision and a safe working environment.

In facilities where multidisciplinary teams may assist with the function of implementing paediatric PITC, the roles of each team member must be defined and refined with time. While nurses may act as frontline staff when children first present for testing, counselling and treatment, other members of the multidisciplinary team undertake important roles: medical doctors will often manage complex cases, social workers and lay

counsellors will conduct outreach and assist with counselling needs and facility managers and other staff may be involved with garnering community support. Each team member serves a vital role in the implementation of paediatric PITC.

Task-shifting and the use of lay counsellors and volunteers may help facilities cope with the demands of scaled-up HIV testing and counselling.

Table 9.2: Key staffing questions to consider

<ul style="list-style-type: none">■ Who will be responsible for procuring supplies: assessing stock, placing orders, receiving and storing stock and accounting for materials?■ Who will identify children for testing?■ Who will conduct pre- and post-test sessions for caregivers of children?■ Who will be responsible for conducting rapid antibody tests, and for completing registers and tracking forms?■ Who will be responsible for DBS collection and completing lab requisition forms, tracking forms and registers?■ Who will be responsible for DBS drying, storing, packaging and shipment to the central laboratory?■ Who will receive and file DNA PCR results?■ Who will review results and provide them to the family?■ Who will be responsible for prescribing CTX, dispensing CTX and counselling regarding CTX adherence?■ Who will make follow-up appointments (for testing and for care and treatment), keep track of client visits, assure adherence to visit schedule and trace those clients lost to follow-up?■ Who will be responsible for data collection and/or data entry, and preparation of summary reports?■ Who will evaluate data and present feedback to staff on site performance?■ Who will train new staff on programme activities?■ Who will provide supervision and mentoring?
--

Specific roles and responsibilities of the coordinator and healthcare workers within paediatric PITC are included below. In many cases, new staff may not be needed for implementation as existing staff may be able to expand into new roles.

The coordinator or director(s) will:

- Take primary responsibility for planning, implementing and supervising PITC services
- Act as the contact person for the programme
- Determine staffing needs; roles and responsibilities of all individuals involved in planning, implementation and monitoring should be defined
- Evaluate staff capacity and training needs

- Ensure that SOPs are in place and implemented for service delivery, quality assurance, monitoring and evaluation, supervision and staff support
- Support training and mentorship
- Supervise staff and conduct quality assurance activities
- Monitor and evaluate services; prepare reports and give feedback to staff and managers

Counsellors and healthcare workers will:

- Describe the rationale for testing
- Conduct pre- and post-test counselling
- Conduct rapid antibody testing and interpret the results
- Collect a DBS specimen sample
- Provide referrals for repeat testing and ongoing care, support and treatment



Trainer Instructions

Slide 10

Step 6:

Discuss capacity building and the two categories of training: general orientation (for all staff, even those not directly involved in the service) and specific training to provide staff involved in providing services the knowledge and skills they need to do their new jobs.

Consider initiating discussion by asking: *As the director of a new paediatric PITC service that is still in the planning stage, what are you going to do to make sure you have a) support from everyone in the department and b) a well trained staff?*



Make These Points

- The general orientation is for all staff and sensitises them to the purpose of paediatric PITC services as well as any changes that should be expected in the workplace.
- Specific and detailed training will be required for staff who will be providing paediatric PITC services.

Training Plan and Curriculum: Capacity Building

A major effort to orient all facility staff is required before starting a PITC programme. All personnel involved in clinical services at the site should participate in a general orientation to:

- Provide staff with an overview of the new service and why it is needed. An understanding of the benefits to children, their families and the

community is important, as is an emphasis on PITC as the national standard of care.

- Sensitise staff on the issues and changes in standard operating procedures for the facility.
- Provide an overview of clinical and programme issues related to the topics in Table 9.3.

Table 9.3: Paediatric PITC orientation topics to cover with all staff

- Rationale for implementing paediatric PITC services
- National guidelines for routine “opt-out” testing
- Overview of facility-specific paediatric PITC protocol and services
- Overview of HIV testing and counselling procedures in children
- Communicating with caregivers and children about HIV testing
- Importance of confidentiality
- Roles and responsibilities of staff
- Linkages to care and treatment and community support
- Legal framework for consent when no parent/guardian is available

In addition to the general orientation, specific and detailed training is required for personnel who will be involved in paediatric testing, counselling, data management or monitoring. Testing and counselling in paediatrics requires specific skills (e.g. blood tests requiring heel sticks, pre- and post-test counselling) and background knowledge (rationale for PITC, understanding of PMTCT, infant feeding, disclosure to older children with HIV and the complexities of determining HIV infection status in children less than 18 months of age). The knowledge and skills required to implement paediatric services are summarised in this curriculum (see curriculum objectives in Module 1).



Trainer Instructions

Slides 11–13

Step 7:

Discuss linkages to comprehensive HIV care as a way of ensuring that the child with HIV has access to the range of services that she or he needs. Consider initiating the discussion by asking: *As director of this new paediatric PITC service, you are planning to routinely test children for HIV; what are you going to do with the child who tests HIV-positive? What referrals might these newly diagnosed children need?*

Encourage participants to talk about the importance of ensuring that children with HIV (and their caregivers) are referred to the care, treatment and support services that they need. The operational word in this discussion is “referral” and what is needed to ensure that a “referral” is successful.



Make These Points

- Attention should be paid to establishing referral linkages for care, treatment and support for children with HIV, their caregivers and other family members.
- A functional referral network requires leadership and coordination; that leadership can come from anyone in the PITC service, whether they are the director, coordinator, nurse or other committed healthcare worker. All it takes is a motivated member of staff to ensure that the network is established, coordinated and monitored.

Linkages to Care and Other Services (Adult and Paediatric)

Access to care and treatment, rather than testing, is the ultimate goal of PITC. Always refer HIV-exposed and -infected children for immediate evaluation, treatment and long-term support. Operational linkages to the programmes and services listed in Table 9.4 should be in place. Where possible, they should be in place prior to implementation of the PITC programme.

While not all services need to be available in the same facility, they should be available through a referral network. A referral network should:

- Be well coordinated so that the referral of clients from the testing site to care, treatment and support facilities is “seamless”, that is, hardly noticed by the client. In order for the referral network to be coordinated, it needs leadership — that is, a healthcare worker who will take the time to visit sister clinics, establish relationships with staff and agree on a way to facilitate the referral of clients back and forth.
- Have a standard operating procedure for referral and a standardised referral form to facilitate a smooth process.
- Have a tracking form for monitoring uptake of referrals.

In the early months, maybe even years, of the establishment of paediatric PITC, it is possible that children will be diagnosed with HIV but that HIV care and treatment facilities are either unavailable or have long waiting lists. It may well take a while for all services needed by children with HIV to be fully scaled up. In the meanwhile, it is still important to provide HIV-exposed children with routine testing to inform decisions on infant feeding and their overall health. Primary care clinics can provide HIV-infected children with many important health-related services; they can also provide some HIV-related care, such as the prescription of cotrimoxazole. Even if waiting lists are temporarily long for paediatric HIV care, it is still important that these children have access to the care that *is* available through the best possible referral network.

Table 9.4: Paediatric PITC referral networks

Paediatric PITC services should be able to refer clients to the following services:

- HIV prevention counselling and services, including condoms
- Family planning services for caregivers and adolescents with HIV
- PMTCT services for caregivers and adolescents with HIV
- HIV care and treatment, including ART
- HIV testing and counselling services for caregiver(s) and siblings
- Counselling and support related to infant feeding; nutrition advice
- CTX prophylaxis
- Adherence preparation and support
- Primary care for children, e.g. growth and development monitoring, vaccinations, vitamin A supplementation
- Management and treatment of common opportunistic infections
- Tuberculosis screening and treatment when indicated; preventive therapy when appropriate
- Malaria prevention and treatment
- STI prevention and treatment
- Palliative care and symptom management
- Psychosocial support/counselling
- Community support groups



Trainer Instructions

Slides 14–18

Step 8: Discuss tracking of clients who miss appointments. Consider initiating discussion by asking: *Remember you are still the director of a new paediatric PITC service, which is now almost ready to open its doors. One of your nurses asks you what our clinic is going to do about clients who miss appointments. What will you tell her regarding your plan for dealing with missed appointments?*

Step 9: Next provide an overview of HIV-related testing — where testing takes place, SOPs for testing and counselling, and the and procurement and storage of materials for testing.



Make These Points

- It is no longer considered acceptable to allow clients to miss appointments. Paediatric PITC services need to have a way to track missed appointments, so that clients can be brought back into care.
- HIV antibody testing is usually conducted at local facilities, as is testing for DNA PCR, however the actual analysis for DNA PCR, as well as CD4 cell counts, are undertaken in district or central laboratories.
- Facilities will need to establish SOPs for testing and counselling to ensure that procedures are consistently provided. Facilities also have to plan for the increased need for testing supplies and materials.

Tracking Clients Who Miss Appointments

It is important, and potentially a matter of life or death, for caregivers and their children to attend follow-up appointments (for further testing, test results or for HIV-related care).

- The clinic procedures must state how clients who have missed appointments will be identified and brought back into care.
- At sites where a large volume of children are seen, it may be necessary to designate a nurse, counsellor or peer volunteer to manage adherence to appointments and follow-up.
- Use the *Paediatric Patient Locator* form to monitor follow-up and facilitate the response to missed appointments. Appendix 8-E provides an example of such a form. See Module 8 for more information on client tracking.

Links to Laboratory Services, including DNA PCR Testing and Laboratory Protocols

HIV antibody testing

Antibody testing is usually conducted on-site, however systems should be in place to ensure a continuous supply of test kits.

DNA PCR and CD4 cell count testing

DBS specimens for DNA PCR testing, as well as specimens for CD4 cell count testing, are sent from health facilities to the district laboratory. Couriers then transport specimens to one of three central laboratories in Lusaka or Ndola. Laboratory results are brought back from the central laboratories to the district hub by the same couriers for further distribution to the primary health facilities.

Target turnaround time is approximately four weeks, however there have been some challenges and delays. There are currently efforts underway to investigate efficiencies and ways of streamlining the process to reduce turnaround times. It should be emphasised that if a child in this context has symptoms that are suggestive of HIV infection, a presumptive clinical diagnosis of severe HIV infection may be necessary to permit decision-making regarding the initiation of potentially life-saving ART.

(See Appendices in Module 7 for staging and treatment guidelines.)

Central Laboratories

There are three central laboratories that process DBS samples to diagnose infants less than 18 months of age for DNA PCR testing:

- **Laboratory based at Arthur Davison Hospital** receives DBS tests from the northern provinces (ZPCT supported sites: Copperbelt, Northern, North Western, Central and Luapula provinces).
- **Kalingalinga laboratory** processes samples from CIDRZ-supported sites (Western, Eastern and Lusaka provinces).
- **UTH research laboratory** receives specimens from UTH, all Mission Hospitals and Southern province.

SOPs for Testing and Counselling

Modules 5 and 6 detail specific guidance for testing and counselling, however the topic is briefly discussed here because testing and counselling are crucial components of the implementation of paediatric PITC. SOPs ensure that testing and counselling procedures are conducted in the same consistent manner across all individuals. SOPs also assist in maintaining quality and are integral to quality assurance (QA) procedures. Finally, SOPs help to ensure that newly-trained staff have something on which to rely as they attempt to improve their testing and counselling skills.

Testing Supplies and Supply Chain

Careful management and oversight of procurement and storage of materials is essential to ensure continuity of supply. Good supply management includes:

- Ensuring the maintenance of product quality
- Reducing waste
- Preventing theft
- Preventing pilfering or diversion to outlets other than those intended
- Gathering information to adequately forecast ongoing procurement needs

The scale-up of paediatric PITC services directly impacts the amount of supplies facilities must keep on hand:

- Facilities should plan for the increased need for testing supplies, such as test kits (both for antibody and DBS testing), and the materials needed to ensure that universal precautions can be consistently applied (e.g. gloves).
- Supplies can continue to be procured through Medical Stores Limited, which is responsible for storing, handling and distributing all medical commodities, except vaccines and blood supplies.



Trainer Instructions

Slides 19–20

- Step 10:** Provide an overview of the monitoring and evaluation of paediatric PITC services.
- Step 11:** Then provide an overview of quality assurance activities and the purpose of these activities.



Make These Points

- Each facility should have a way to document the provision of services that includes the use of standardised forms and registers. Information from these forms and registers is then summarised and compared to previous months or years as a way of monitoring progress.
- Quality assurance is important for the continuous evaluation of PITC services to ensure compliance with guidelines and protocols, to identify problems and, ultimately, to improve services.

Monitoring and Evaluation

Program monitoring provides information about the clients seen and services provided to those clients. Monitoring information provides information about whether facilities are doing what they are supposed to do. With the national scale-up of paediatric PITC services, additional indicators will be tracked so that testing and counselling services (outside of PMTCT and VCT) for children and their families can be monitored and evaluated. These have been described more fully in Module 8.

Monitoring data are summarised and analysed at regular intervals at the local (facility), district and national levels to examine progress, identify gaps and improve service delivery. Paediatric PITC monitoring and evaluation does not operate parallel to the national PITC adult programme, but rather in conjunction with the national system.

Systems and Protocols for Quality Assurance and Control

Quality assurance is important for the continuous evaluation of PITC services to ensure compliance with guidelines and protocols, to identify problems and, ultimately, to improve services for children and their families.

QA activities evaluate:

- Compliance with national guidelines, standard operating procedures and protocols
- Quality of testing and counselling procedures
- Proper documentation in registers and records
- Adequacy of system to identify children for testing and counselling; client flow
- Linkages to care and treatment

QA activities are described more fully in Module 8.



Trainer Instructions

Slide 21

Step 12:

Discuss staff supervision. As a way to get participants to think about the topic ask:

- *Keep your director hat on for just a moment longer. Now let's think about staff supervision. Let's say that you have trained your staff, you have set up your referral networks, you have monitoring and QA systems in place, but you have one more question — how do you know that your staff are providing a quality service?*
- *Can you ever know what is going on in a counselling session, behind that closed door?*
- *How can you be sure your clients are getting the quality of service they deserve?*



Make These Points

- Direct observation of counselling sessions by a supervisor — so long as it is provided in a supportive (not critical) way — provides staff with the feedback needed to improve their skills. Direct observation should take place twice monthly for the first six months, monthly for the second six months and quarterly thereafter.

Framework and Tools for Supervision

Supportive supervision should be a component of supervisors' interaction with staff and refers to working with staff to establish goals, monitor

performance, recognise good worker practices, identify and correct problems and proactively improve the quality of services. For more information on supportive supervision, refer to Module 8.

Direct observation of counselling sessions (with the permission of the client) can help ensure that the content of counselling is complete, that counselling messages are accurate and that the quality of the counselling interactions meets expected standards. Many healthcare workers report that such sessions are useful in enhancing skills. A suggested time frame for routine, direct observation of testing and counselling by the supervisor is twice monthly for the first six months, monthly for the second six months and quarterly for healthcare workers with more than one year of experience.



Trainer Instructions

Slide 22

Step 13:

Refer participants to Appendix 9-A: Paediatric PITC Action Planning and Implementation Template, and let them know that they will be expected to complete this template by the end of the training (in small groups with other participants from the same health facility). There will be time to work on the matrix after the practicum, but they should take notes and think about next steps during the practicum.



Make These Points

- Encourage participants throughout the practicum session to physically and mentally take note of procedures and ideas from this session that may be appropriate for implementation at their own facility upon return.
- While much of the material in this session is more relevant for supervisors, other staff members are integral to the implementation of paediatric PITC.



Trainer Instructions

Slides 23–26

Step 14: Allow five minutes for questions and answers on this session.

Step 15: Summarise this module by reviewing the key points in the slides and box below.



Module 9: Key Points

- Required resources for paediatric PITC implementation include:
 - Stakeholder support and involvement
 - Human resources, training, supervision and mentoring
 - Training plan and curriculum, including plans for ongoing and refresher training
 - Formal linkages to other services for post-test support, care and treatment
 - Linkages to lab services, data management, quality assurance and other service components
 - SOPs for testing and counselling procedures
 - Material supplies and resources for testing and a reliable supply chain
 - Sufficient space to ensure safe working conditions and confidentiality for clients
 - Monitoring and evaluation systems, plan and tools
- Facility supervisors and staff should ensure that the required resources for effective implementation of paediatric PITC services are in place.
- All clinicians involved in the care of children and families need an orientation to PITC services to understand the rationale for implementation of these services and the national standard of care. Specific and detailed training is required for personnel who will be involved in providing paediatric PITC services to clients.
- Community commitment directly impacts the implementation of PITC services. Healthcare workers must work with the community to provide an understanding of the commitment to test all children. Establishing buy-in from stakeholders will promote and improve the implementation of PITC services.

Appendix 9-A Paediatric PITC Action Planning and Implementation Template

Instructions: For each step, write down the key actions that need to be taken, as well as the person responsible, resources needed, timeline and how the action will be measured. Also, write down the top five anticipated challenges and possible solutions for each.

Step 1: Develop facility protocol for paediatric PITC

What is the action?	Who is responsible?	What resources or support are needed?	When will the action happen?	How will we measure progress on this action?

Step 2: Ensure adequate staffing for paediatric PITC (including lay providers)

What is the action?	Who is responsible?	What resources or support are needed?	When will the action happen?	How will we measure progress on this action?

Step 3: General staff orientation and comprehensive training and orientation for staff on paediatric PITC

What is the action?	Who is responsible?	What resources or support are needed?	When will the action happen?	How will we measure progress on this action?

Step 4: Develop strong linkages to HIV care and treatment services, including ART (adult and paediatric)

What is the action?	Who is responsible?	What resources or support are needed?	When will the action happen?	How will we measure progress on this action?

Step 5: Develop strong linkages with the laboratory, including for DNA PCR testing. Develop protocols for communication, transport, feedback and quality assurance between the laboratory and clinical services

What is the action?	Who is responsible?	What resources or support are needed?	When will the action happen?	How will we measure progress on this action?

Step 6: Implement plan for community outreach, education and referral linkages, including tracking of clients who miss appointments

What is the action?	Who is responsible?	What resources or support are needed?	When will the action happen?	How will we measure progress on this action?

Step 7: Implement data management protocols, including use of registers and forms

What is the action?	Who is responsible?	What resources or support are needed?	When will the action happen?	How will we measure progress on this action?

Step 8: Adapt the logistics system to maintain and monitor supply inventory

What is the action?	Who is responsible?	What resources or support are needed?	When will the action happen?	How will we measure progress on this action?

Step 9: Implement supervision and quality assurance systems

What is the action?	Who is responsible?	What resources or support are needed?	When will the action happen?	How will we measure progress on this action?

Step 10: Implement a paediatric PITC monitoring and evaluation plan, in line with national guidelines

What is the action?	Who is responsible?	What resources or support are needed?	When will the action happen?	How will we measure progress on this action?

Anticipated challenges to implementing the paediatric PITC action plan and possible solutions

Anticipated Challenge	Possible Solution(s)
1.	
2.	
3.	
4.	
5.	

References and Resources

Republic of Zambia Ministry of Health. (2009). National Guidelines for Paediatric Provider-initiated HIV Testing and Counselling.

Module 10 Supervised Clinical Practicum and Action Planning



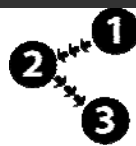
Total Module Time: 4 days (approx 3.5 days for practicum; 4 hours 20 minutes for classroom)

Learning Objectives

After completing this module, participants will be able to:

- Understand the core competencies in paediatric PITC and prepare for hospital-based practicum sessions.
- Demonstrate core competencies in paediatric PITC in a hospital or other clinical setting.
- Discuss and debrief on the practicum session.
- Identify their own strengths and weaknesses in providing paediatric PITC and plan for ongoing practice and mentorship.
- Develop a site-specific implementation and action plan for paediatric PITC.
- Describe potential challenges to implementing paediatric PITC at participants' sites and solutions to each.

Methodologies



- Interactive trainer presentation
- Supervised practicum sessions
- Small group work
- Large group discussion

Materials Needed



- Flip chart
- Markers
- Tape or Bostik
- Paediatric PITC Practicum Checklists — one for each participant
- The trainer should have the slide set for Module 10.
- Participants should have their Participant Manuals. The Participant Manual contains background technical content and information for the exercises.

References and Resources



- National Guidelines for Paediatric Provider-initiated HIV Testing and Counselling

Advance Preparation



- Exercise 1, which is the actual practicum, requires advance preparation. Ideally, advance preparation should be initiated at least a month before the practicum and include at least three meetings. Two of the three meetings are in the healthcare facility: one with leadership and the other with clinical staff who have agreed to assist as preceptors. The third meeting is with the preceptors. Ensure you are familiar with the Trainer Manual, and in particular this Module, ahead of time.
- Meet with site leadership and staff in advance to discuss the training and the supervised practicum sessions.
 - Discuss the possibility that some of the facility staff will take on roles as preceptors during the preceptorship.
 - If agreed, work with site leadership to identify the facility staff who are experienced and able to support participant learning.
 - Select wards or clinics for the practicum sessions, ideally a setting where there are many children who need PITC services.
- Get a sense of daily activities at the site as well as patient flow and number; discuss with site leadership the best way for participants to observe and practise applying the skills they have learned.
- Meet with preceptors in advance of the practicum.
- Review Appendix 10-A: Tips on Mentoring and Coaching, with preceptors.
- Discuss the key skills taught in training. Discuss what participants will get out of the practicum and the preceptor role during the practicum.
- Review the practicum checklist in Appendix 10-B and decide how participants will practise the key skills. For example, if participants are to practise giving a group pre-test session, this must be arranged in advance, clients must be present, a space for the talk identified, etc.
- Let them know if they will be responsible for evaluating participant performance. Discuss how to fill in the Paediatric PITC Practicum Checklist with examples of “Good,” “Fair” and “Poor” performance for several of the competencies.
- Discuss with preceptors the possibility of debriefing daily with the participant(s) assigned to her or him during the practicum.
- If time allows, role play scenarios that can occur during the practicum, so that they can learn how to deal with difficult situations.
- Photocopy **Appendix 10-B: Paediatric PITC Practicum Checklist**; make two copies for each participant. Give each

	<p>participant one copy and give each preceptor one copy for each participant in his/her group. Preceptors should have one checklist for each participant in their group (plus a few extra copies just in case). Preceptors will fill in the checklist for each participant throughout the course of the supervised practicum.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Plan for the participants to reconvene for lunch during each of the 3.5 days of the practicum. In addition, as the group reconvenes each day after the practicum for debriefing, make sure participants know where to convene and when. ■ Gather a summary of the week's lessons and accomplishments from preceptors to share during Exercise 2, Practicum session debrief. Remember that this information must be generally applicable to the group rather than to one single individual. ■ Exercise 3 requires advance preparation. Please review this exercise in advance.
--	--

Session 10.1: Practicum Preparation

Activity/Method	Time
Interactive trainer presentation (Slides 1–11)	40 minutes
Questions and answers	10 minutes
Total Session Time	50 minutes

Session 10.2: Supervised Clinical Practicum

Activity/Method	Time
Exercise 1: Supervised clinical practicum: Individual and small group practicum sessions (Slide 12)	3.5 days
Total Session Time	3.5 days

Session 10.3: Practicum Debrief

Activity/Method	Time
Interactive trainer presentation (Slide 13)	15 minutes
Exercise 2: Practicum session debrief: Small and large group discussion (Slides 14–15)	60 minutes
Questions and answers	5 minutes
Total Session Time	80 minutes

Session 10.4: Site-specific Paediatric PITC Action Planning and Implementation (Post-practicum)

Activity/Method	Time
Interactive trainer presentation (Slides 17–18)	10 minutes
Exercise 3: Preparing site-specific implementation and action plans for paediatric PITC: Small group work and large group discussion (Slides 19–20)	105 minutes
Questions and answers	5 minutes
Review of key points (Slide 22)	10 minutes
Total Session Time	130 minutes

Session 10.1 Practicum Preparation



Total Session Time: 50 minutes



Trainer Instructions

Slides 1–3

Step 1: Begin by reviewing the Module 10 Learning Objectives (page 10-1) and Session Objective, listed below.

Session Objective

After completing this session, participants will be able to:

- Understand the core competencies in paediatric PITC and prepare for hospital-based practicum sessions.



Trainer Instructions

Slide 4

Step 2: Introduce the practicum to participants and explain that this is the time they will get to put all of the information and skills they have learned together and practise in a clinical setting.

Introduce new preceptors that may be joining the group. Review Appendix 10-A: Tips on Mentoring and Coaching, with preceptors.

Ask participants if they have participated in practicum sessions as a part of other trainings. Ask them to discuss what was helpful about these practicum sessions and what could have been done better.



Make These Points

- The supervised practicum is a chance for participants to apply all that they have learned in the training to their clinic-based practice.
- It is a chance for healthcare workers to ask questions and to get the experience that will allow them to feel more comfortable initiating paediatric PITC activities at their sites.



Trainer Instructions

Slides 5–10

- Step 3:** Review the practicum logistics and assignment of participants to preceptors. Allow time for questions.
- Step 4:** Refer participants to Appendix 10-B. Go over the key skills participants will be asked to demonstrate during the practicum, using the checklist as a guide.
- Ask participants if there are skills or areas on the practicum checklist that they do not feel comfortable with or for which they need review. Take the time needed to review content areas and skills, pulling in lessons learned from the case studies or reviewing key content information as appropriate, and as time allows.
- Step 5:** Lead a discussion about conduct, confidentiality and client consent during the practicum.
- Discuss plans for the daily practicum debrief sessions, as well as for the final practicum debrief on Day 9 of the training. All trainers, preceptors and participants should attend the debriefing sessions.



Make These Points

- During the practicum session, participants will be asked to demonstrate knowledge, skills and ability regarding the core competencies in paediatric PITC.
- Be kind, friendly and courteous when interacting with patients, healthcare workers and managers at the health facility.
- Remember confidentiality is of the utmost importance. Discussions and observations made during the practicum should only be shared with other participants, trainers or preceptors in your practicum group. If there is need to discuss the case with the wider group for learning purposes, always maintain patient confidentiality by changing names and any other identifying information. For example, do not describe an individual so specifically that others may be able to guess who she is, for example, a tall woman with three children who lives in a specific town.
- Universal precautions must be used, always.

Core Competencies in Paediatric PITC

Participants will be asked to practise and demonstrate a number of skills learned during the training, including:

- Use the paediatric HIV testing and counselling algorithms.
- Identify children for HIV testing and counselling.
- Conduct pre-test counselling sessions in groups.
- Conduct individual pre-test counselling sessions.
- Collect blood samples from children.
- Conduct rapid HIV antibody testing.
- Collect, dry and pack DBS samples for DNA PCR Testing.
- Interpret HIV test results.
- Provide post-test counselling for positive and negative results.
- Provide infant and young child feeding education and support to parents.
- Provide referrals and planning next steps with mothers, caregivers and children.
- Link HIV-exposed and HIV-infected children and their families with needed care and treatment services, including ARV prophylaxis, ART, CTX prophylaxis and support services.
- Complete forms and registers related to paediatric HIV testing and counselling.

Preceptors will be available to help and mentor participants as they master the skills learned in training.

Refer to the Paediatric PITC Practicum Checklist in Appendix 10-B for more information on the core competencies for paediatric PITC.

Conduct during the Practicum Session

Prepare participants for the practicum sessions by reviewing the following information:

- *We are guests at the health facility and must respect the wishes of the healthcare workers and managers who work in the facility.*
- *Keep all discussions and observations during the practicum confidential. Only share with other participants, trainers or preceptors and only for learning purposes. Change any identifying information about specific individuals so that no one will be able to guess who is being described. Do not describe someone so specifically, for example, a tall woman who has three children and lives in a specific town, so that others may be able to guess who she is.*
- *Always inform the preceptor if you need to take a break or leave the facility for any reason during the practicum.*
- *Always introduce yourself to healthcare workers and clients. Tell them that you are currently training in paediatric HIV testing and counselling, and that the training includes observation and practice in the hospital.*
- *Always ask clients for their verbal consent to observe or practise. Keep in mind that clients have the right to refuse to give consent or to withdraw*

their consent at any time. Participants and preceptors are obligated to concede to the client's request.

- *Always ask the preceptor if you have a question or a concern.*

Preceptors will be using Appendix 10-B and Appendix 10-C: Final Evaluation by Preceptors, to assess participant performance during the practicum. Participants should therefore be familiar with the content of these forms.



Trainer Instructions

Slide 11

Step 6: Allow five minutes for questions and answers on this session.

Session 10.2 Supervised Clinical Practicum



Total Session Time: 3.5 days



Trainer Instructions

Slide 12

Step 1: Begin by reviewing the Session Objective, listed below.

Session Objective

After completing this session, participants will be able to:

- Demonstrate core competencies in paediatric PITC in a hospital or other clinical setting.



Trainer Instructions

Slide 12

Step 2: Lead participants through Exercise 1 — the supervised practicum session which will take place over 3.5 days in the hospital.

Exercise 1: Supervised clinical practicum	
Individual and small group practicum sessions	
Purpose	▪ To practise paediatric HIV testing and counselling skills learned during the training and receive mentoring.
Duration	3.5 days
Advance Preparation	▪ See “Advance Preparation” section on the second page of this module.
Introduction	The supervised clinical practicum will allow participants the chance to practise and apply the paediatric HIV testing and counselling knowledge and skills learned during the training.
Activities	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Assign each participant to a preceptor. There should be no more than 4–5 participants assigned to each preceptor. 2. Participants should practise each of the core competencies listed in Appendix 10-B during the course of the practicum session. 3. Preceptors should observe and mentor participants to correctly conduct each skill. Preceptors should note which skills each participant was able to practise during the day on the Paediatric PITC Practicum Checklist (a checklist should be completed for EACH participant).

	<p>Note any comments or areas that need improvement on the checklist.</p> <p>4. Suggest to participants that they complete the Paediatric PITC Practicum Checklist for themselves, noting which core competencies were conducted and any comments. Extra copies of the Checklist should be made available.</p> <p>Optional: At the discretion of the trainer, participants may rotate so that they have at least one session with a different preceptor. The checklist can be used as a communication tool so that a new preceptor is aware of skills that have been practised and those that need more work.</p>
<p>Daily Debriefing</p>	<p>Participants should reconvene as a large group at the end of each practicum day. During the daily practicum debrief, ask participants:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ <i>What core competencies did you practise during the day?</i> ▪ <i>Which competencies were the most comfortable for you to conduct? Which were the most challenging?</i> ▪ <i>Are there areas in which you feel you need more practise? Which ones?</i> ▪ <i>Were there any unexpected or new things that you observed today during the practicum session?</i> ▪ <i>Do you have suggestions to improve tomorrow's practicum session?</i> <p>Optional: If previously discussed and agreed upon with preceptors, participants may also discuss these questions with their preceptors, individually or as a small group as time allows, at the end of each day.</p>

Session 10.3 Practicum Debrief



Total Session Time: 80 minutes



Trainer Instructions

Slide 13

Step 1: Begin by reviewing the Session Objectives, listed below.

Session Objectives

After completing this session, participants will be able to:

- Discuss and debrief on the practicum session.
- Identify their own strengths and weaknesses in providing paediatric PITC and plan for ongoing practice and mentorship.



Trainer Instructions

Slides 14–15

Step 2: Lead participants through Exercise 2, which will provide opportunity to debrief the supervised clinical practicum session.

Exercise 2: Practicum session debrief

Small and large group discussion

Purpose	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ To share experiences and lessons learned during the multi-day practicum.
Duration	60 minutes
Advance Preparation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ See “Advance Preparation” section on the first page of this module.
Introduction	This will provide an opportunity for participants to discuss their practicum experiences and learn from each other.
Activities	<p>Small Group Discussions:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Ask participants to break into groups of four or five. Mix participants so that they are NOT with people who were in their practicum group (where possible). The objective of this exercise is to encourage participants from each of the practicum groups to interact and share. 2. Give each group a flip chart and markers and ask them to discuss and note responses to the following questions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ <i>What was your overall experience during the practicum?</i> ▪ <i>What skills were the most difficult to perform?</i> ▪ <i>What skills were less difficult?</i>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ <i>In which areas would you like more mentoring in the future?</i> ▪ <i>What did you learn that you hadn't anticipated learning?</i> ▪ <i>What was your most memorable experience from the practicum?</i> ▪ <i>How can participants and preceptors continue to support one another in building their skills once the training is over?</i> <p>3. Give the small groups about 30 minutes for the discussion.</p> <p>Large Group Discussion:</p> <p>4. Bring the large group back together and ask each of the small groups to briefly present key points of their small group discussions. The facilitator should note on flipchart the following key points: areas where participants want more mentoring and how participants and preceptors can continue to support one another.</p> <p>5. Encourage open discussion.</p> <p>If possible, present a summary of the preceptors' overall experiences during the clinical practicum session. Note that individual participant performance should not be discussed in the large group. Instead, present key observations during the practicum including strengths and areas that still need improvement. Preceptors can suggest ways for participants to continue building their skills in paediatric PITC after returning to their sites.</p>
Debriefing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Congratulate participants on a job well done during the practicum session. Remind participants that they will need to continue practising these skills when they return to their health facilities. Encourage participants to help mentor each other, as well as other healthcare workers at their facility, in order to provide HIV testing and counselling, and lifesaving HIV care and treatment to as many infants and children as possible. ▪ Tell participants they will have an opportunity to discuss the specific implementation and action plan for paediatric PITC at their specific facility next.



Trainer Instructions

Slide 16

Step 3: Allow five minutes for questions and answers on this session.

Session 10.4 Site-specific Paediatric PITC Action Planning and Implementation (Post-practicum)



Total Session Time: 130 minutes



Trainer Instructions

Slide 17

Step 1: Begin by reviewing the Session Objectives, listed below.

Session Objectives

After completing this session, participants will be able to:

- Develop a site-specific implementation and action plan for paediatric PITC.
- Describe potential challenges to implementing paediatric PITC at participants' sites and solutions to each.



Trainer Instructions

Slide 18

Step 2: Ask participants if they have any previous experience writing action plans or work plans. Use the following questions to guide the discussion:

- *Why do we need action plans?*
- *Have you ever worked on an action plan (or a workplan) in the past? For what activities?*
- *How did you and your colleagues use the action plan?*
- *What could have been done differently to make the action plan more useful over the long-term?* (The most common response to this question — and it should be noted if participants don't mention it — is better monitoring of the plan. Action plans should be pulled out quarterly, reviewed and, if necessary revised, as a way to remind one another of the actions needed to achieve PITC goals.)

Step 3: Review the key resources and key steps required for implementing paediatric PITC discussed in Session 9.1, Table 9.1 and Figure 9.1. Refer participants to Appendix 9-A — the Paediatric PITC Action Planning and Implementation Template as a guide.



Make These Points

- Action plans and workplans, can help prioritise, guide and monitor work in a specific area over time.
- Training alone is not enough to implement quality paediatric PITC services.
- Having a comprehensive and measurable action plan will help ensure that participants are able to apply what they have learned in training to implement paediatric PITC services after returning to their site.



Trainer Instructions

Slides 19-20

- Step 4:** Lead participants through Exercise 3, which will give an opportunity to develop and present a site-specific paediatric PITC implementation and action plan.

Exercise 3: Preparing site-specific implementation and action plans for paediatric PITC

Small group work and large group discussion

Purpose	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ To develop site-specific paediatric PITC implementation and action plans.
Duration	105 minutes
Advance Preparation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Review Appendix 9-A. Make any adjustments to the template if needed to be responsive to the local situation.
Introduction	<p>This will be a chance for participants to develop a site-specific paediatric PITC action plan. If participants are from the same facility, they should work together. The action plan should be realistic, specific and measurable. The action plan should be used by participants when they return to their site after the training. It will also be used by supervisors/mentors to provide follow-up and site-level support to their team after the training. Anticipating challenges and their solutions is also a part of action planning.</p> <p>Please see Appendix 10-D for a partly completed Action Planning Template.</p>
Activities	<p>Part 1: Small Group Work</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Break participants into small groups. Participants from the same health facilities should work together to complete one paediatric PITC implementation and action plan for their specific site. 2. Refer participants to Appendix 9-A, The Paediatric PITC Action Planning and Implementation Template or give

	<p>electronic copies of the template to participants who have laptop computers. Alternatively, space is provided to write on the hard copy. Pass out extra copies, if needed.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 3. For each key component, ask participants to discuss in their small groups and write down the key actions that need to be taken, as well as the person responsible, resources needed, the timeline and how the action will be measured. Encourage participants to think about the realities and challenges at their site when discussing the action plan. (Note that some participants may find this exercise challenging. The trainer should spend time with each group to facilitate the activity). 4. Ask participants to write down the top five anticipated challenges to implementing this action plan, and possible solutions for each. 5. Ask participants to prepare a 10 minute presentation to the large group, highlighting key action items and anticipated challenges and solutions. 6. Give the groups about 45–55 minutes for the small group work. <p>Part 2: Small Group Presentations and Large Group Discussion</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 7. Reconvene the large group. 8. Ask each small group to spend about 10 minutes presenting key action items they will undertake when returning to their site. In the interest of time, ask the small groups to focus on their priority action items only. 9. Encourage the large group to comment and ask questions. All participants should share anticipated challenges to implementing their action plans and jointly brainstorm possible solutions.
Debriefing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Remind participants that this action plan should be used to plan, implement and monitor the rollout of paediatric PITC services at each health facility. Suggest that participants share the action plan with facility management and hold regular (monthly or quarterly is best) meetings to review progress on the action plan and make adjustments as needed. ▪ Trainers should be sure to collect copies of each action plan from the small groups. The action plan may also be used by supervisors, mentors and trainers to follow-up with training participants at the site level at regular intervals in the future.



Trainer Instructions

Slide 20

- Step 5:** Remind participants that they should receive ongoing site-level support to implement paediatric PITC on a regular basis, after the training is completed. Lead a discussion on the type and timing of site-level support that participants will receive after the training.



Make These Points

- Remind participants that action plans should be reviewed (and completed or revised, as necessary) with supervisors, mentors and trainers in the future as a part of follow-up and as a measure of progress.



Trainer Instructions

Slides 21–22

- Step 6:** Allow five minutes for questions and answers on this session.
- Step 7:** Summarise this module by reviewing the key points in the slides and box below.



Module 10: Key Points

- Action planning is critical to the implementation of new services and programmes. Action planning is a fluid process that needs to be revisited, monitored, updated and revised as time goes on to best suit the needs and resources at individual healthcare facilities.
- Action plans or work plans can help prioritise, guide and monitor work over time.

Appendix 10-A Tips on Mentoring and Coaching

What are the qualities of a good preceptor?

- Strong knowledge, skills and experience related to paediatric PITC
- Professional
- Understands the importance of skill sharing and capacity building and is therefore willing to teach and to mentor
- Respects others
- Conscientious and trustworthy
- Accountable for her or his work; responsive to feedback
- Upholds confidentiality at all times
- Ethically sound decision making
- Leadership

Preceptor Do's and Don'ts

Do:

- Make participants feel welcome and valued
- Set shared achievable goals
- Put yourself in the participant's shoes
- Ask questions that show interest in developing participants' skills
- Monitor progress and give feedback frequently
- Provide guidance, encouragement and support

Don't:

- Appear unprepared
- Be vague about your expectations
- Confine the participant to passive roles
- Leave feedback to the final assessment
- Embarrass or humiliate learners
- Accept behaviour that is unethical or unsafe
- Judge if a participant does not know something

Five-step method for teaching clinical skills

1. Provide an overview of the skill and how it is used in patient care.
2. Demonstrate exactly how the skill is conducted without commentary.
3. Repeat the procedure, but describe each step.
4. Have participant "talk through the skill" by detailing each step.
5. Observe and provide feedback to the participant as she or he performs the skill.

Adapted from: George, J.H., & Doto, F.X. (2001). A simple five-step method for teaching clinical skills. *Family Medicine*, 33, 577-8.

Appendix 10-B Paediatric PITC Practicum Checklist

Preceptor instructions: Use one Checklist per participant in your group. As you observe a skill, tick your rating as GOOD, FAIR or POOR. Record any comments or recommendations in the right-hand column; be prepared to share comments with the participant. Use this Checklist to complete the final evaluation for each participant. **Participant instructions:** Complete this checklist during the practicum with your assessment of your own performance. In the “Comment” column, record areas for improvement or further study.

Name of Participant: _____ **Dates of Practicum:** _____

Name of Preceptor(s): _____ **Name of Health Facility:** _____

CORE COMPETENCIES	PRECEPTOR'S or SELF-RATING (TICK ONE)			COMMENTS
	GOOD	FAIR	POOR	
Early HIV Diagnosis in Infants and Children				
Explains the importance of identification of HIV in children as early as possible				
Routinely offers HIV testing and counselling for infants and children				
Uses the “opt out” approach to HIV testing and counselling				
Follows the paediatric HIV diagnostic algorithms				
▪ Children less than 18 months of age				
▪ Infants and children 18 months of age or older				
Pre-test Education/Counselling Sessions				
Leads a group pre-test information and education session with caregivers				
Conducts individual pre-test education and counselling sessions with caregivers				

CORE COMPETENCIES	PRECEPTOR'S or SELF-RATING (TICK ONE)			COMMENTS
	GOOD	FAIR	POOR	
Follows guidelines for “opt out” informed consent				
Provides follow-up counselling for caregivers who decline testing for their child				
Rapid HIV Antibody Testing				
Uses universal precautions				
Collects rapid HIV test specimen				
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ From an infant 				
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ From a child 				
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ From an adult 				
Performs rapid HIV antibody test (and confirmatory test)				
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Determine 				
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Uni-Gold 				
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Bioline 				
Interprets the rapid HIV antibody test results				
Documents HIV test results on the correct registers/cards				
Delivers negative rapid test result and offers post-test counselling to the caregiver of a child:				

CORE COMPETENCIES	PRECEPTOR'S or SELF-RATING (TICK ONE)			COMMENTS
	GOOD	FAIR	POOR	
▪ Less than 18 months of age				
▪ 18 months of age or older				
▪ Not breastfeeding				
▪ Breastfed by an HIV-negative mother				
▪ Breastfed by a mother living with HIV				
Delivers positive rapid test result and delivers post-test counselling to the caregiver of a child:				
▪ Less than 18 months of age				
▪ 18 months of age or older				
Delivers positive rapid test result and offers post-test counselling to a caregiver or other adult				
Makes needed referrals for clinical care of the child and caregiver				
Makes needed referrals for community support for the child and family				
DNA PCR Testing				
Uses universal precautions				
Collects valid DBS sample from a child				
▪ Heel				

CORE COMPETENCIES	PRECEPTOR'S or SELF-RATING (TICK ONE)			COMMENTS
	GOOD	FAIR	POOR	
▪ Toe				
▪ Finger				
Labels sample card				
Completes lab request form				
Makes follow-up appointment with the caregiver				
Dries the DBS specimen				
Packs and ships the DBS specimen				
Reads results of DNA PCR testing from the laboratory				
Documents HIV test results on the correct registers/cards				
Delivers negative DBS test result and offers post-test counselling to the caregiver:				
▪ Breastfed child				
▪ Not breastfeeding child				
Delivers positive DBS test result and offers post-test counselling to the caregiver				
Makes needed referrals for clinical care of the child and caregiver				

CORE COMPETENCIES	PRECEPTOR'S or SELF-RATING (TICK ONE)			COMMENTS
	GOOD	FAIR	POOR	
Makes needed referrals for community support for the child and family				
Follows up with caregiver who does not return for DBS test results				
PMTCT and Infant Feeding				
Correctly explains MTCT of HIV				
Explains interventions to reduce the chances of MTCT, including ARVs for the mother and the baby				
Helps mothers improve and implement safe infant feeding				
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ For infants up to six months of age 				
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ For children 6-24 months of age 				
Provides follow-up infant feeding counselling and support				
On-going Care and Support for the Child and Family				
Links caregivers and children to HIV care and treatment				
Demonstrates understanding of care for HIV-exposed children and provides services/referrals				
Demonstrates understanding of care for HIV-infected children and provides services/referrals, including for ART				
Demonstrates understanding of care for caregivers and other adults living with HIV and provides referrals, including for ART				

CORE COMPETENCIES	PRECEPTOR'S or SELF-RATING (TICK ONE)			COMMENTS
	GOOD	FAIR	POOR	
Provides/refers all HIV-exposed and HIV-infected children for CTX prophylaxis				
Records clients' follow-up preferences				
Provides ongoing counselling and psychosocial support to caregivers and families				
Demonstrates ability to effectively communicate with children				
Provides referrals for community services and support				
General Communication and Counselling Skills				
Greets clients properly				
Ensures privacy				
Maintains confidentiality				
Uses active listening skills				
Uses good non-verbal communication				
Asks for information with open-ended questions				
Uses gestures and responses to show interest				
Reflects back what the client is saying				
Shows empathy towards the caregivers and children				

CORE COMPETENCIES	PRECEPTOR'S or SELF-RATING (TICK ONE)			COMMENTS
	GOOD	FAIR	POOR	
Uses non-judgemental words				
Helps the caregiver process information and set realistic next steps				

Appendix 10-C Final Evaluation by Preceptors

FINAL EVALUATION BY PRECEPTORS:

Name of participant: _____

Tick one:

- Demonstrated a majority of core competencies effectively and is ready to start providing paediatric PITC services
- Demonstrated some core competencies effectively, but still needs more practise before providing paediatric PITC services
- Unable to demonstrate most skills and should participate in the training course again before providing paediatric PITC services

Additional comments:

Preceptor(s) Signature(s): _____

Date: _____

Appendix 10-D Sample of a Partly Completed Paediatric PITC Implementation and Action Planning Template

Step 1: Develop facility protocol for paediatric PITC

What is the action?	Who is responsible?	What resources or support are needed?	When will the action happen?	How will we measure progress on this action?
Identify a person to research and draft protocol.	Mrs. Ndombe, Clinic Director	None	By end January 2010	Person identified for this role.
Complete first draft of draft protocol.	To be determined (TBD) Nurse	None	By mid May 2010	Completion of first draft.
Review of first draft by clinic director.	Mrs. Ndombe	None	By end May 2010	Review of first draft.
Establish technical working group of representatives from clinic, community and primary care providers to review protocol.	Mrs. Ndombe	Funds for tea and snacks for 2 meetings	By end May 2010	Establishment of TWG
Develop 2 nd draft of protocol.	Nurse	None	By mid June 2010	Completion of second draft
Technical Working Group (TWG) to meet and discuss 2 nd draft	Mrs. Ndombe	None	End June 2010	Complete review of second draft.
Nurse to revise draft protocol further to comment from TWG and submit 3 rd draft to Mrs. Ndombe and then back to the TWG.	Nurse and Mrs. Ndombe,	None	End July 2010	Third draft submitted to TWG on time.
TWG approves protocol.	Mrs. Ndombe	None	End August 2010	Protocol approved.
Protocol presented to staff in training.	Mrs. Ndombe and Nurse	None	September 2010	Staff training completed.
Protocol fully implemented			End September 2010	

Step 2: Ensure adequate staffing for paediatric PITC (including lay providers)

What is the action?	Who is responsible?	What resources or support are needed?	When will the action happen?	How will we measure progress on this action?
Assess staffing needs and develop plan for training current staff.	Mrs. Ndombe, Clinic Director	None	By end January 2010	Needs assessment and plan completed.
Identify training opportunities.	Mr. Mbwake, Clinic administrator	None	End February 2010	Courses or other plan identified to meet 90% of training needs identified in plan.
Staff training completed.	Identified staff	\$5,000 for course registration & hotels	August 2010	Training completed and plan updated. Copies of training certificates in personnel files.
Develop staffing plan with budget and submit to Hospital directors.	Mrs. Ndombe	\$50,000 for new staff	March 2010	Staffing plan submitted.
Meet with Hospital directors to discuss plan and advocate for addition funding to hire new staff.	Mrs. Ndombe		April 2010	Completion of meeting with agreement on status of additional funding

Step 4: Develop strong linkages to HIV care and treatment services, including ART (adult and paediatric)

What is the action?	Who is responsible?	What resources or support are needed?	When will the action happen?	How will we measure progress on this action?
Identify person to lead development of referral network.	Mrs. Ndombe, Clinic Director	None	January 2010	Nurse Blanco agrees to lead this project.
Develop list of services needed in referral network.	Nurse Blanco	None	February 2010	List completed in consultation with all

				clinic staff & approved by Mrs. Ndombe.
Meet one-on-one with representative from each of the agencies in the referral network.	Nurse Blanco	None	By end April 2010	Meetings with all agencies completed.
Convene first meeting of all agencies in referral network.	Nurse Blanco	Funds for tea and snacks for meeting	Early May 2010	Meeting convened.
Work with referral network to develop standardised referral and intake forms.	Nurse Blanco	None	Early June 2010	Completion of first draft of referral and intake forms.
Work with referral network to develop referral monitoring form.	Nurse Blanco	None	Early July 2010	Completion of first draft of referral monitoring form.
Establish quarterly meetings to evaluate referral network and discuss progress and weaknesses.	Nurse Blanco	Funds for tea and snacks for meeting	Early July 2010	At least 4 meetings to take place between July 2010 and July 2011.

References and Resources

Republic of Zambia Ministry of Health. (2009). National Guidelines for Paediatric Provider-initiated HIV Testing and Counselling.



Module 11 Training Review, Evaluation and Closing



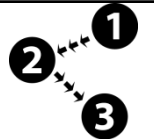
Total Module Time: 110 minutes (1 hour, 50 minutes)

Learning Objectives

After completing this module, participants will be able to:

- Discuss whether or not the training objectives have been achieved.
- List next steps, including training follow-up and supportive supervision.
- Complete the training Post-test.
- Evaluate the training and give suggestions for improvement.

Methodologies



- Interactive trainer presentation
- Discussion
- Individual work

Materials Needed



- Flip chart
- Markers
- Tape or Bostik
- Photocopies of Appendix 11-A (Pre-test/Post-test) and Appendix 11-B Training Evaluation Form (one of each for each participant).
- Training completion certificates
- The trainer should have the slide set for Module 11.
- Participants should have their Participant Manuals. The Participant Manual contains background technical content and information for the exercises.

References and Resources



- None for this module

Advance Preparation



- Prepare training completion certificates for each participant.
- Invite a guest speaker to give participants their training completion certificates and close the training (optional).
- Photocopy Appendix 11-A Pre-Test/Post-Test and Appendix 11-B Training Evaluation Form so each participant has a copy.
- Exercises 1 and 2 require advance preparation. Please review the exercises ahead of time.

Session 11.1: Review of Training Objectives and Discussion of Next Steps

Activity/Method	Time
Interactive trainer presentation (Slides 1–10)	30 minutes
Questions and answers	5 minutes
Total Session Time	35 minutes

Session 11.2: Post-test, Training Evaluation and Closing

Activity/Method	Time
Exercise 1: Post-test: Individual work (Slide 13)	30 minutes
Exercise 2: Training evaluation: Individual work (Slide 14)	15 minutes
Review the answers to the Post-test (Slides 15–40)	15 minutes
Presentation of training certificates and closing (Slide 41)	15 minutes
Total Session Time	75 minutes

Session 11.1 Review of Training Objectives and Discussion of Next Steps



Total Session Time: 35 minutes



Trainer Instructions Slides 1–2

Step 1: Begin by reviewing the Module 11 Learning Objectives (page 11-1) and the Session Objectives, listed below.

Session Objectives

After completing this session, participants will be able to:

- Discuss whether or not the training objectives have been achieved.
- List next steps, including training follow-up and supportive supervision.



Trainer Instructions Slides 3–6

Step 2: Congratulate participants on a job well done during the training. Review the Paediatric PITC Training Objectives on the next page. Remind participants that these were originally discussed during Day 1 of the training. After reading each out loud, ask participants if they feel that they have achieved the objective and, if not, what additional information or practise is needed. Make notes on flip chart.



Make These Points

- The course was designed to support the MoH's roll-out of paediatric PITC and enable healthcare workers and managers to effectively implement paediatric PITC services at their health facility as part of routine care. These services help healthcare workers to identify HIV-exposed and HIV-infected children as soon as possible and enrol them in lifesaving care and treatment.

Paediatric PITC Training Objectives

By the end of this training participants will be able to:

1. Explain the rationale for paediatric PITC and the benefits of diagnosing HIV as early as possible.
2. Define family-focused care and describe how paediatric HIV testing and counselling can be the entry point to care for the entire family.
3. Demonstrate an understanding of the national guidelines on HIV testing and counselling, including PITC and age-specific HIV testing algorithms.
4. Conduct the group and individual HIV pre-test session with caregivers and children.
5. Conduct rapid HIV testing on children and interpret the results, according to national guidelines.
6. Provide post-test counselling, according to national guidelines.
7. Collect DBS samples for DNA PCR testing on children and interpret the results, according to national guidelines.
8. Provide infant and young child feeding education, counselling and support, according to national guidelines.
9. Actively link HIV-exposed and HIV-infected children, mothers and family members with needed care, support and treatment services. Monitor and support adherence to follow-up appointments.
10. Provide caregivers, children and family members with ongoing supportive counselling.
11. Collect and analyse routine data on paediatric testing and counselling and put quality assurance measures in place.
12. Develop a site-specific action plan for implementing paediatric PITC.



Trainer Instructions

Slides 7–10

Step 3:

Refer to the lists of “Concerns”, “Expectations”, and “Strengths” compiled during the first exercise (Exercise 1: Getting to know each other, in Module 1). The lists of “Concerns”, “Expectations”, and “Strengths” should be posted on the training room wall.

- *Would anyone like to discuss their current perspective on the “Concerns” that they listed during the “Getting to know each other” exercise?*
- Review the “Expectations” and compare with what was actually covered, note any expectations that were not met and discuss next steps to help ensure this training need is met.
- Reinforce the importance of the “Strengths” that each of us bring to our work. Ask if anyone would like to add to the “Strengths” list.

- Step 4:** Go around the room and ask each participant to share:
- *What was the most valuable information or skill you learnt during the training?*
 - *What is one action that you will prioritise in your work to improve PITC for children and their families?*
- Step 5:** Remind participants that each is responsible for working with other members of their multidisciplinary team to implement their site-specific action plan. Review key next steps for participants when returning to their sites, as well as plans for ongoing supportive supervision and mentoring on paediatric PITC.



Make These Points

- Training is only the first step in implementing quality paediatric PITC services.
- Participants should plan to meet with their supervisors to discuss the information learnt in training and the action plan. Ideally, this should take place within two weeks of today.
- There should also be ongoing supportive supervision and mentoring including site visits — for participants and their teams.

Immediate Next Steps

Below are some suggested next steps for participants to implement within two weeks of returning to their health facility. These may need to be adapted to fit the context of specific settings. Participants should:

- Debrief with their supervisors, as well as the facility management.
- Share the action plan with their supervisors and discuss ways to share the action plan with managers of other units in the facility. After this meeting participants should expect to make edits to their action plans further to feedback from their supervisors.
- Plan a multi-disciplinary team meeting where the participant can debrief colleagues and other key stakeholders in the facility on what has been learnt during the training. This meeting should focus on reviewing and revising the participant's draft action plan and reaching a collaborative agreement on the way to initiate/improve implementation of paediatric PITC services. Be sure that each multidisciplinary team member has a copy of the action plan and that there is time to revise the plan, discuss and agree on specific next steps and a timeline for those steps.
- Plan a follow-up meeting in a month's time to review progress made on the action plan.

Review of Mentoring and Follow-up Plan

This paediatric PITC training will be rolled-out using a phased approach. First, the MoH will conduct a centralised training of trainers, which will be followed by decentralised training in the provinces and subsequently in the districts. Mentorship by colleagues experienced in providing paediatric PITC services will be an integral component of the roll-out.



Trainer Instructions

Slide 11

Step 6: Allow five minutes for questions and answers on this session.

Session 11.2 Post-test, Training Evaluation and Closing



Total Session Time: 75 minutes



Trainer Instructions Slide 12

Step 1: Begin by reviewing the Session Objectives, listed below.

Session Objectives

After completing this session, participants will be able to:

- Complete the training Post-test.
- Evaluate the training and give suggestions for improvement.



Trainer Instructions Slide 13

Step 2: Lead participants through Exercise 1, which is the training Post-test, found in Appendix 11-A.

NOTE to Trainer: The answers to the Post-test are provided in Appendix 11-C; participants do not have Appendix 11-C in their manuals.

Exercise 1: Post-test

Individual work

Purpose	▪ To assess the knowledge gained during the training.
Duration	30 minutes
Advance Preparation	▪ Make photocopies of Appendix 11-A Pre-test/Post-Test, one for each participant.
Introduction	Introduce the Post-test. Explain that the Post-test includes the same questions that participants answered during the pre-test on the first day of training. A comparison of the pre- and post-test results will illustrate how much participants have learnt during the training, help to identify weaknesses in the training curriculum and areas where follow-up support and mentoring are needed.
Activities	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Hand out a copy of the Post-test to each participant. 2. Ask participants to write their name in the space provided. Tell participants they will have 25 minutes to complete the test.

	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 3. Keep track of time. After 20 minutes, let participants know they should finish the test in about 5 minutes. 4. After 25 minutes, thank the participants and collect the Post-test. 5. Review the correct answers to the post-test as a large group and inform participants that they will get their Post-test score shortly.
Debriefing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Ask participants how they felt answering the questions today compared with the first day of training. ▪ Note: the trainers should score all of the Post-tests while participants are completing the training evaluation (the next exercise). Post-test scores should be recorded for the trainers to keep and share with participants. The Pre- and Post-test scores should be compared and included in the training report.



Trainer Instructions

Slides 14–40

- Step 3:** Lead participants through Exercise 2, which is the training evaluation. Score all of the Post-tests while participants are completing the training evaluation.
- Step 4:** Take about 15 minutes to review with participants the correct answers to the Post-test. The trainer or a participant should read each question, participants should then state which answer they think is correct. Proceed through each of the questions until all have been discussed.

Exercise 2: Training evaluation

Individual work

Purpose	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ To get participants' feedback on the training.
Duration	15 minutes
Advance Preparation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Make photocopies of Appendix 11-B, the training evaluation form.
Introduction	Introduce the training evaluation and encourage participants to give honest feedback — both positive and negative. Tell participants that the trainers will review the evaluation forms carefully and discuss how they could make future trainings better based on the feedback.
Activities	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Hand out a copy of the training evaluation form to each participant. 2. Remind participants that they do not have to write their name or position if they do not want to, but it is helpful to provide the name of the facility. 3. Give participants about 10–15 minutes to complete the training evaluation.

	4. Ask the participants to put their evaluation forms face down in a pile in the front of the room when they are finished.
Debriefing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Thank participants for their feedback and suggestions. ▪ Return participants' Post-test results, which should have been scored while participants completed the evaluation.



Trainer Instructions

Slide 41

Step 5: Once again, congratulate participants on a job well done.

Present each participant with a training completion certificate.

Step 6: If a guest speaker was invited, ask that person to say a few words to close the training. If there is no guest speaker, the trainers can close the training.

Appendix 11-A Pre-test/Post-test Questionnaire for Participants

Name: _____

- 1) The primary goal of PITC services for children is to:
 - a) Teach HIV prevention
 - b) Let healthcare workers know who has HIV and who doesn't
 - c) Identify HIV-infected children and link them to HIV care and treatment
 - d) Provide counselling on family planning

- 2) The national PMTCT strategy includes:
 - a) Voluntary HIV counselling and testing (VCT) for pregnant women
 - b) Counselling HIV-positive women to avoid having children
 - c) Promoting formula feeding for all infants borne to women living with HIV
 - d) None of the above

- 3) Critical components of PMTCT services include:
 - a) The use of anti-retrovirals to reduce MTCT risk
 - b) Routine HIV testing in pregnant women
 - c) Linking HIV-infected women and their infants to care and treatment services
 - d) All of the above

- 4) "HIV-exposed" is the same as "HIV infected".
 - a) True
 - b) False

- 5) Which of these is always true?
 - a) A positive HIV antibody test in a 12-month-old infant means the infant is HIV-infected
 - b) HIV-exposed means that the baby was born to an HIV-positive mother, but a final determination of the child's HIV infection status is probably pending.
 - c) A child who is HIV-exposed should be tested for HIV 2 weeks after cessation of breastfeeding
 - d) A child who is not HIV-exposed should be tested again at the age of 12 months

- 6) At what age can you use the HIV antibody test to determine a child's HIV status?
- 6 weeks
 - 3 months
 - 18 months
 - 24 months
- 7) When is a mother least likely to pass HIV to her infant?
- When she is taking anti-retrovirals
 - When she is newly infected
 - When she has advanced HIV disease
 - When she is formula feeding during the day and breastfeeding at night only
- 8) Which is better (for a woman who is living with HIV), high or low CD4 counts?
- High
 - Low
- 9) Ideally, PITC services should be offered to all children with unknown HIV status.
- True
 - False
- 10) The Zambia Ministry of Health recommends prioritising PITC for which of the following:
- Children with growth faltering
 - Hospitalised children
 - Children with tuberculosis
 - All of the above
- 11) A 19-month-old breastfed child of a woman living with HIV tests negative for HIV antibody. You should advise the mother...
- On how to safely wean the child from breastfeeding. Advise the mother that the child should be retested 3 months after breastfeeding is stopped.
 - The baby is not infected; no further testing is needed.
 - To stop giving the baby cotrimoxazole and have another test at 24 months
 - The baby probably has HIV, since he is breastfeeding.
- 12) If you want to know a child's HIV status, which HIV test would you use for the child who is 3-months-old and still breastfeeding?
- Rapid antibody test
 - None. The child should not be tested yet since he or she is still breastfeeding and still has a chance of getting HIV
 - DNA PCR test
 - Uni-Gold test

- 13) If an infant has a positive HIV-antibody test and a negative DNA PCR test at 3 weeks of age, and is exclusively formula-fed, the baby:
- Requires no further HIV testing
 - Should start cotrimoxazole
 - Should have another DNA PCR test after the age of 6 weeks
 - Should have an HIV-antibody test after the age of 6 weeks
- 14) If the HIV status is unknown, HIV testing should be recommended in:
- A 3-year-old child admitted to the hospital with malnutrition
 - A 12-month-old child who cannot sit without support
 - A 6-year-old child whose mother is on ART
 - All of the above
- 15) After pre-test counselling, a mother declines HIV testing for her hospitalised 24-months-old child. You should:
- Tell her the test is required for all children in Zambia
 - Explain that she will have to go elsewhere for her child's care
 - Try to ascertain her concerns and provide additional counselling
 - None of the above
- 16) You are counselling the caregiver of a 2-year-old child who has just tested HIV antibody positive. Your post-test counselling session includes discussion of:
- Availability and importance of HIV care and treatment
 - HIV testing for the mother and other family members as needed
 - Making sure no one in the family learns the child's status
 - A and B
- 17) An HIV-antibody test for a 6-month old breastfeeding child is positive. Your next step is to:
- Conduct post-test counselling and collect a blood sample for DNA PCR testing
 - Tell the mother to stop breastfeeding as soon as possible
 - Inform the mother that this means that she is HIV-infected, provide her with counselling and refer her for care
 - Discuss family planning with the mother
 - A and C
- 18) Which of the following is true?
- An HIV-infected mother should give her child infant formula whenever she can get it so that she does not breastfeed as often
 - An HIV-infected mother should not take her HIV medicines while she is breastfeeding
 - An infant should begin complementary foods at the age of 6 months
 - A 6 month old HIV-exposed infant who is breastfeeding should be on cotrimoxazole
 - C and D

- 19) The 12-year-old child's Determine rapid HIV antibody test is positive.
Your next step:
- a) Repeat the Determine antibody test for confirmation.
 - b) Collect a DBS sample for DNA PCR testing
 - c) Explain to the child or the caregiver that you will need to take another sample of blood to run an additional test
 - d) Conduct a confirmatory test with a different rapid antibody test
 - e) C and D
- 20) Which of the following is the appropriate action after pre-test counselling the caregiver of a 6-week-old infant of unknown HIV-exposure status?
- a) Conduct a rapid antibody test
 - b) Collect blood specimen for a DNA PCR test
 - c) Do not test: the infant is too young to show definite results
 - d) Do not test: the infant is too small to have blood taken
- 21) What test should be used if the infant of an HIV-positive mother is 8-months-old and stopped breastfeeding at 6 months?
- a) Rapid HIV-antibody test now
 - b) DNA PCR test now
 - c) Rapid HIV antibody test at 18 months of age
 - d) DNA PCR test in two weeks time
- 22) The best puncture site to collect a DBS specimen from a 6-month-old infant who weighs 7 kg is the finger.
- a) True
 - b) False
- 23) DBS specimens should be labelled after they are dry.
- a) True
 - b) False
- 24) What type of referral is needed for a 5-year-old child who tests HIV antibody positive and shows signs of growth failure?
- a) DNA PCR test
 - b) Nutrition assessment and counselling
 - c) Assessment for eligibility for ART
 - d) B and C

- 25) For the child described in Q24, after referrals have been made, what is the responsibility of the healthcare worker?
- a) Nothing more is needed since the caregiver and child were referred for appropriate treatment
 - b) Conduct a confirmatory antibody test
 - c) Talk to the mother about why she waited so long to get her child tested
 - d) Healthcare worker should follow up with the caregiver to ensure that the child was taken for the recommended appointments

Appendix 11-B Training Evaluation Form

Name (optional): _____

Your position (optional): _____

Health facility where you work: _____

INSTRUCTIONS: Please rate the following statements on a scale of 1 to 5.

	☹ Strongly Disagree	Disagree	Neither agree nor disagree	Agree	☺ Strongly Agree
1. The training objectives were clear.	1	2	3	4	5
2. This training met my expectations.	1	2	3	4	5
3. The technical level of this training was appropriate.	1	2	3	4	5
4. The pace of this training was appropriate.	1	2	3	4	5
5. The facilitators were engaging and informative.	1	2	3	4	5
6. The information I learnt in this training will be useful to my work.	1	2	3	4	5
7. I am confident that after this training, I will be able to implement paediatric PITC services at my facility.	1	2	3	4	5

How helpful were each of the training sessions to you and your work? If you have specific comments, please write them on the next page.

	☹ Not helpful				☺ Very helpful
Module 1: Introduction and Course Overview	1	2	3	4	5
Module 2: Review of MTCT and PMTCT	1	2	3	4	5
Module 3: Review of Infant and Young Child Feeding	1	2	3	4	5
Module 4: Overview of Paediatric Testing and Counselling	1	2	3	4	5
Module 5: Pre- and Post-test Counselling for Paediatric HIV Testing	1	2	3	4	5
Module 6: HIV Testing in Children	1	2	3	4	5
Module 7: Ongoing Care, Treatment and Supportive Counselling for the Child and Family	1	2	3	4	5
Module 8: Record Keeping, Monitoring and Quality Assurance	1	2	3	4	5
Module 9: Paediatric PITC Action Planning and Implementation	1	2	3	4	5
Module 10: Supervised Clinical Practicum	1	2	3	4	5

What was the best part of this training?

How can we improve this training?

Other comments:

**Thank you for your participation, and for your commitment to
children and families in Zambia!**

Appendix 11-C Pre-test/Post-test Trainer Version (Correct answers indicated)

Pre-test Questionnaire: Paediatric Provider-initiated HIV Testing and Counselling (For trainer only: Answers highlighted)

- 1) The primary goal of PITC services for children is to:
 - a) Teach HIV prevention
 - b) Let healthcare workers know who has HIV and who doesn't
 - c) Identify HIV-infected children and link them to HIV care and treatment**
 - d) Provide counselling on family planning

- 2) The national PMTCT strategy includes:
 - a) Voluntary HIV counselling and testing (VCT) for pregnant women
 - b) Counselling HIV-positive women to avoid having children
 - c) Promoting formula feeding for all infants borne to women living with HIV
 - d) None of the above**

- 3) Critical components of PMTCT services include:
 - a) The use of anti-retrovirals to reduce MTCT risk
 - b) Routine HIV testing in pregnant women
 - c) Linking HIV-infected women and their infants to care and treatment services
 - d) All of the above**

- 4) "HIV-exposed" is the same as "HIV infected".
 - a) True
 - b) False**

- 5) Which of these is always true?
 - a) A positive HIV antibody test in a 12-month-old infant means the infant is HIV-infected
 - b) HIV-exposed means that the baby was born to an HIV-positive mother, but a final determination of the child's HIV infection status is probably pending.**
 - c) A child who is HIV-exposed should be tested for HIV 2 weeks after cessation of breastfeeding
 - d) A child who is not HIV-exposed should be tested again at the age of 12 months

- 6) At what age can you use the HIV antibody test to determine a child's HIV status?
- 6 weeks
 - 3 months
 - 18 months**
 - 24 months
- 7) When is a mother least likely to pass HIV to her infant?
- When she is taking anti-retrovirals**
 - When she is newly infected
 - When she has advanced HIV disease
 - When she is formula feeding during the day and breastfeeding at night only
- 8) Which is better (for a woman who is living with HIV), high or low CD4 counts?
- High**
 - Low
- 9) Ideally, PITC services should be offered to all children with unknown HIV status.
- True**
 - False
- 10) The Zambia Ministry of Health recommends prioritising PITC for which of the following:
- Children with growth faltering
 - Hospitalised children
 - Children with tuberculosis
 - All of the above**
- 11) A 19-month-old child of a woman living with HIV tests negative for HIV antibody. You should advise the mother...
- On how to safely wean the child from breastfeeding. Advise the mother that the child should be retested 3 months after breastfeeding is stopped.**
 - The baby is not infected; no further testing is needed.
 - To stop giving the baby cotrimoxazole and have another test at 24 months
 - The baby probably has HIV, since he is breastfeeding.
- 12) If you want to know a child's HIV status, which HIV test would you use for the child who is 3-months-old and still breastfeeding?
- Rapid antibody test
 - None. The child should not be tested yet since he or she is still breastfeeding and still has a chance of getting HIV
 - DNA PCR test**
 - Uni-Gold test

- 13) If an infant has a positive HIV-antibody test and a negative DNA PCR test at 3 weeks of age and is exclusively formula-fed, the baby:
- a) Requires no further HIV testing
 - b) Should start cotrimoxazole
 - c) Should have another DNA PCR test after the age of 6 weeks**
 - d) Should have an HIV-antibody test after the age of 6 weeks
- 14) If the HIV status is unknown, HIV testing should be recommended in:
- a) A 3-year-old child admitted to the hospital with malnutrition
 - b) A 12-month-old child who cannot sit without support
 - c) A 6-year-old child whose mother is on ART
 - d) All of the above**
- 15) After pre-test counselling, a mother declines HIV testing for her hospitalised 24-month-old child. You should:
- a) Tell her the test is required for all children in Zambia
 - b) Explain that she will have to go elsewhere for her child's care
 - c) Try to ascertain her concerns and provide additional counselling**
 - d) None of the above
- 16) You are counselling the caregiver of a 2-year-old child who has just tested HIV antibody positive. Your post-test counselling session includes discussion of:
- a) Availability and importance of HIV care and treatment
 - b) HIV testing for the mother and other family members as needed
 - c) Making sure no one in the family learns the child's status
 - d) A and B**
- 17) An HIV-antibody test for a 6-month old breastfeeding child is positive. Your next step is to:
- a) Conduct post-test counselling and collect a blood sample for DNA PCR testing
 - b) Tell the mother to stop breastfeeding as soon as possible
 - c) Inform the mother that this means that she is HIV-infected, provide her with counselling and refer her for care
 - d) Discuss family planning with the mother
 - e) A and C**

- 18) Which of the following is true?
- a) An HIV-infected mother should give her child infant formula whenever she can get it so that she does not breastfeed as often
 - b) An HIV-infected mother should not take her HIV medicines while she is breastfeeding
 - c) An infant should begin complementary foods at the age of 6 months
 - d) A 6-month-old HIV-exposed infant who is breastfeeding should be on cotrimoxazole
 - e) **C and D**
- 19) The 12-year-old child's Determine rapid HIV antibody test is positive. Your next step:
- a) Repeat the Determine antibody test for confirmation.
 - b) Collect a DBS sample for DNA PCR testing
 - c) Explain to the child or the caregiver that you will need to take another sample of blood to run an additional test
 - d) Conduct a confirmatory test with a different rapid antibody test
 - e) **C and D**
- 20) Which of the following is the appropriate action after pre-test counselling the caregiver of a 6-week-old infant of unknown HIV-exposure status?
- a) **Conduct a rapid antibody test**
 - b) Collect blood specimen for a DNA PCR test
 - c) Do not test: the infant is too young to show definite results
 - d) Do not test: the infant is too small to have blood taken
- 21) What test should be used if the infant of an HIV-positive mother is 8-months-old and stopped breastfeeding at 6 months?
- a) Rapid HIV-antibody test now
 - b) **DNA PCR test now**
 - c) Rapid HIV antibody test at 18 months of age
 - d) DNA PCR test in two weeks time
- 22) The best puncture site to collect a DBS specimen from a 6-month-old infant who weighs 7 kg is the finger.
- a) True
 - b) **False**
- 23) DBS specimens should be labelled after they are dry.
- a) True
 - b) **False**

- 24) What type of referral is needed for a 5-year-old child who tests HIV antibody positive and shows signs of growth failure?
- a) DNA PCR test
 - b) Nutrition assessment and counselling
 - c) Assessment for eligibility for ART
 - d) B and C**
- 25) For the child described in Q24, after referrals have been made, what is the responsibility of the healthcare worker?
- a) Nothing more is needed since the caregiver and child were referred for appropriate treatment
 - b) Conduct a confirmatory antibody test
 - c) Talk to the mother about why she waited so long to get her child tested
 - d) Healthcare worker should follow up with the caregiver to ensure that the child was taken for the recommended appointments**

